



J. Miller del. et sc.

*Printed for John Rivington, in St. Paul's Church Yard,
James Rivington & James Fletcher, in Peter Noster Row*

172c
THE
Gardeners Kalendar;

Directing what WORKS are necessary to be performed

EVERY MONTH

IN THE

Kitchen, Fruit, and Pleasure-Gardens,

As also in the

Conservatory and Nursery.

WITH ACCOUNTS

- I. Of the particular SEASONS for the *Propagation* of all Sorts of ESCULENT PLANTS and FRUITS, with the Times wherein each Sort is proper for the Table.
- II. The proper SEASONS for Transplanting all Sorts of TREES, SHRUBS, and PLANTS, with the Time of their Flowering.

By PHILIP MILLER, F. R. S. K

Member of the Botanick Academy at FLORENCE, and
Gardener to the Worshipful Company of APOTHECARIES,
at their Botanick Garden in *Chelsea*.

THE TWELFTH EDITION,

Adapted to the NEW STYLE;

With a LIST of the MEDICINAL PLANTS, which
may be gathered for Use in each MONTH.

To which is now added, A short INTRODUCTION to
the KNOWLEDGE of the SCIENCE of BOTANY,
illustrated with Copper Plates.

L O N D O N:

Printed for the AUTHOR;

And sold by JOHN RIVINGTON in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*,
C. HITCH and L. HAWES, R. BALDWIN, J. RICHARDSON,
and T. LONGMAN in *Pater-noster-Row*, A. MILLAR in the
Strand, J. WHISTON, B. WHITE, G. HAWKINS in *Fleet-street*,
J. HINTON in *Newgate-street*, W. JOHNSTON in *Ludgate-*
street, S. CROWDER near *London Bridge*, B. LAW, T. CASLON
in *Stationers Court*, and J. DODSLEY in *Pall-Mall*.

M DCC LX.

Jos: Banks

TO

Mr. WILLIAM GATAKER, Master;

BENJAMIN CHARLEWOOD, Esq; } Wardens;
Mr. DANIEL HANCHETT, }

And the other MEMBERS

OF THE

COURT of ASSISTANTS

OF THE

Worshipful Society of APOTHECARIES

OF

L O N D O N,

This EDITION of the

Gardeners Kalendar,

Is with the greatest Respect Inscribed, by

Their most obedient humble Servant,

PHILIP MILLER.



T H E
P R E F A C E.

 *S there have been several editions of this Gardeners Kalendar already published, it is presumed that the public is so well acquainted with the performance, as to render it unnecessary to mention any thing of it here.*

In each of the editions subsequent to the first, there have been some alterations and additions made, in order to include such new plants as have been annually introduced into the English Gardens; and also to mention such discoveries as have been made in their culture and management, which have not been few since the first publication of this work: therefore it was absolutely necessary that these should be inserted, without which the performance would have been imperfect.

vi P R E F A C E.

The improvements which have been made in the art of Gardening, within fifty years past, are very great; so that we may without presumption affirm, that every part of this art is in as great perfection at this time in England, as in any part of Europe. Our markets being better supplied with all sorts of esculent plants, thro' the whole year, than those of any other country; and these in their several seasons are afforded at so cheap rates, that they are become a great part of the food of the poor: to which we may in part attribute the abatement of those violent scorbutick disorders, which formerly raged so much in this country.

The Kitchen Gardeners (especially those near London), have experienced, that by treating most of the esculent vegetables in a less tender manner, than was before practised, their crops succeed much better; and by sowing half the quantity of seeds on the same extent of ground, there is a great saving of labour, and their plants thrive much better.

The

P R E F A C E. vii

The Florists also have found out many better methods of raising and improving all the sorts of flowers, with which the English Gardens are now so plentifully stored; so that many sorts which were some years past nursed up with the greatest care, and treated in the most tender manner, are now planted in the open borders of the Pleasure Garden; where they thrive and are in greater vigour, than when they were treated with the utmost nicety.

As to the number of exotick trees, shrubs, and plants, which have been brought into England within half a century past, it is doubtful if it is not nearly equal to those before known here; and a great part of them are become denizens in England, being so far naturalized, as to thrive in the open air without shelter. And by making trials with many of those plants which were formerly nursed up in green-houses, and treated with great tenderness, they have been found to thrive much better when

planted in the full ground, and treated with less delicacy.

These new discoveries which are annually made in the different parts of Gardening, occasion a necessity for alterations and additions to be made, in the books which are written upon this subject; therefore the author hopes, that what he has done of this nature, will not be interpreted, as if done with a design to depreciate the former editions, or to enhance the sale of the book, both which are far from his intention: but here he cannot help observing, that the demand for this book has been so great, as to tempt some of the Booksellers to endeavour to impose on the publick, by employing their hackney scriblers, to purloin from this, and the author's larger work, materials for books on the same subject. How well these have been executed, those who are the best acquainted with the subject, are the most capable judges. But if we may presume to guess at the reception which these books have met with from the publick,

P R E F A C E. ix

publick, by the demand there is for them, we may conclude, that neither of those performances will ever come to have another edition.

*In a work of this nature, which is designed only to instruct the practitioner, at what times of the year, each work is to be performed; it cannot be expected, that the doing those works, can be here inserted, as that would swell the book greatly beyond the limited size, and render it less portable; and as in the *Gardeners Dictionary*, there are ample instructions for the raising and management of all the sorts of trees, shrubs, and plants, with which the English Gardens are at present furnished; the curious Reader is desired to turn to that, for directions how to perform the several works, in the different branches of Gardening.*

The inserting in this work what esculent plants and fruits are in season, and also the trees, shrubs, and flowers, which blossom in each month, the author believes to be as necessary as any other

x P R E F A C E.

part of the performance, for by this those gentlemen who reside in the country but a part of the year, may be instructed to make choice of such fruits, and to cultivate such esculent plants in their Gardens, as will be in season at the particular time of the year, when they can enjoy them. The trees, shrubs, and flowers for adorning their Gardens, may also be adapted to the same time.

*The directions here given for the sowing of seeds, transplanting and management of all sorts of plants, as also the times of their maturity, are here put down for the meridian of London, and according to the new style, so that in the management of those Gardens which are situated in a more northern latitude, there must be an allowance made for the distance they are removed from this meridian. This must be understood in general, for there are some particular warm soils and situations at a great distance from London, in which vegetation is almost
as*

as early as the lands in general near London.

It may also be necessary to inform the Reader, that the calculations here made, are not taken from any particular season, but by comparing a diary which the author has kept many years ; from a medium of several years observation, the whole has been compiled. For there is frequently the difference of a fortnight or three weeks, between one season and another, in the times of fruit ripening, and also in the maturity of esculent plants. But in many of the winter fruits, there is often much more ; for in one season, the pears of a tree which grew to a south east aspect, were ripe the middle of October, and by the end of the same month, those which were not eaten were become rotten ; and the following year, the fruit of the same tree, were not eatable before the end of December. Therefore the Reader is desired to excuse the author, when he finds some sorts of autumn or winter fruits, mentioned to be in eating, at a
disse-

different time, from that in which they are generally in their maturity, because such alterations frequently happen in the seasons, as will occasion the difference before-mentioned in the time of ripening of several fruits.

There are also the same kinds of work, directed to be performed in different months, which to those who are unexperienced in the practical part of Gardening, may appear to be absurd; but those who are better acquainted with the subject, know, that in different seasons and situations, the same work may be performed, three weeks or a month earlier or later; there the practitioner must be directed herein by his own judgment and observation, as it is impossible to prescribe rules for the variety of seasons and situations, without repeating these necessary works in different months; therefore the most skilful Gardeners will allow of these frequent repetitions, and it is hoped those who are less acquainted
with

with the practice, will not censure what they do not understand.

*To this edition of the Gardeners Kalendar, the author was advised to subjoin a short Introduction to the Science of Botany, in which the definitions and terms of art which are used in the present fashionable system of Doctor Linnæus, should be explained, for the benefit of practical Gardeners, as the having some skill in the knowledge of plants, is now become a necessary qualification for those who have a desire to advance themselves in their profession; therefore the author was soon prevailed on to undertake it, and accordingly had the plates engraven, and the whole prepared for the press, before the translation of Linnæus's *Philosophia Botanica*, published by Mr. Lee, made its appearance. When that was made publick, the author of the Gardeners Kalendar had some doubts about the publication of his; but upon farther consideration, he was determined to add it as an Appendix to the Kalendar,*

as

xiv P R E F A C E.

as the subject is treated differently, and only the more essential parts of the Linnæan system are here explained, the whole being comprised in so small a compass, as not to enhance the price of the book but little: and for the benefit of those, who are already possessed of either of the former editions of the Gardeners Kalendar, this small tract is printed separately, and may be purchased by those who are desirous to have it.

As the author has been careful in the revising the whole work, and inserting of the necessary additions and alterations, made in this impression, he hopes it will meet with the like favourable reception from the publick, as the former editions have done, and for which he thinks he cannot better testify his gratitude to the publick, than by endeavouring to promote to the utmost of his abilities, the useful art of Gardening.

T H E

J Banks 1764



THE
Gardeners Kalendar.



JANUARY.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN-
GARDEN.

IF the weather in this month is mild, you must continue to dig and trench your ground for spring crops, laying it up in ridges to sweeten, that it may be ready for sowing or planting the following months: for by exposing of the earth thus in ridges to the frost, it will be greatly mellowed, and rendered fertile. On warm borders and banks, near walls, pales, or hedges, you may now sow Radish, Carrot, Lettuce, and small Salleting-seeds; and in warm Situations plant some Peas and Beans to succeed those which were planted in

B

November

2 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

November and December. You may also plant the first crop of Windsor, Sandwich, and Toker Beans, about the middle of this month, which will come in to succeed the early Lisbon Beans, to supply the table when they are going off. The Toker and Sandwich Beans being hardier than the Windsor, they are preferred by the market gardeners, and others who have more regard to the quantity, than the quality of their crops, but the Windsor Beans are the best of the three sorts for the table.

WHEN this month proves frosty, and the ground is frozen so hard as not to be dug (as it often happens), then you may carry dung upon the ground, repair hedges, rub out and clean your seeds, and prepare shreds and nails for those trees which are to be pruned in the next month; and get all your tools ready for use when the weather is mild, that you may not be hindered with these things when every other part of the business is in great haste; for if, in this and the next month, you omit putting in your crops, whenever the weather will permit, you will find a great loss attend it the following spring and summer, especially in dry land.

MAKE a hot-bed for sowing early Cucumbers, and as there is great hazard of the plants
succeed-

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 3

succeeding at this season, so there should be some seeds put into the bed at three or four different times this month, that if some should fail, the others may supply their loss; there should also be one or two hot-beds made at about three weeks distance from each other for to force Asparagus, to succeed those beds which were made the last month, that there may be no want of it in the kitchen, where it is required at this season.

Sow Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, Turnep, and other sorts of small Sallet-herbs, upon moderate hot-beds, to bring them forward; for at this season those seeds which are sown in the full ground will not succeed, or if they do come up, they will soon be killed by the frost, if they are exposed to the open air; but these hot-beds will only require to be covered with mats, so that those persons who have no frames to spare, may arch the beds with hoops, and cover them with mats, which will be sufficient covering in any moderate season; or if, in severe winters, the mats are covered with straw to keep out the frost, the small Sallet-herbs will come up in these beds, almost as well as if covered with glasses,

EARTH up Celery to blanch it, when the weather is open, and the ground not too wet,

B a

for

4 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

for the plants cannot be too much guarded by earthing them up at this time; for if they are left too naked, they will be in great danger of being destroyed by frost. Therefore at this season it should be kept earthed up, as near the tops of the plants as possible. And, in very hard frost, some of the Celery, as also of the ridges of Endive which were put into the ground to blanch, should be covered with long litter, or tanners bark, to keep the frost out of the ground, otherwise they cannot be taken up for use when the ground is frozen. You must also, in open weather, draw up the earth to your early Peas and Beans, which will greatly protect their stems from frost; but this should be done when the surface of the ground is dry, lest the moisture of the earth should rot their tender stalks. But in doing of this, great care should be had, not to bury the tops of the plants with earth,

THE Mushroom-beds must now be carefully covered with long fresh straw, and the old covering removed, for at this season the straw soon becomes rotten with moisture, so there can't be too great care taken of those beds to preserve them from the frost, and also keep off the wet, both which are destructive to them at this season.

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 5

IN mild weather, you may transplant some of your best kinds of Endive plants on a warm border, to stand for seed; in doing of which, you should be careful to lay the border a little sloping, that the wet may not lodge about the plants: and be very careful to make choice of the strongest plants, which have the greatest number of leaves, and if it be the curled Endive, those plants must be chosen whose leaves are most curled; otherwise you will degenerate the sort, in two or three years, so as to be good for little.

LOOK carefully to your Cauliflower plants, which are under frames, pulling off all decayed leaves from them, which, if permitted to remain upon them, would endanger the plants, especially if the weather should prove so bad, as that the glasses could not be opened for three or four days to give them air, which sometimes happens at this time of the year; when these rotten leaves will cause the inclosed air in the beds to turn rancid and become damp, to the great prejudice of the plants; therefore you should always pick them off as soon as they turn yellow, and be sure to give the plants as much air as possible in mild weather; for if they are drawn weak at this season, they will not be able to resist the cold of

6 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

the open air the next month, toward the end of which, if the season is mild, they should be planted out where they are to remain; and where there are Cauliflower plants under bell or hand glasses, which are designed to come early, the glasses should be constantly raised on one side with props in mild weather, to admit air to the plants, otherwise they will draw up very weak, and not have proper strength in their stems to produce good Cauliflowers. But in frosty weather the glasses must be set down as close as possible, to prevent the wind from getting under the glasses which may kill the plants.

THOSE who have Cucumber and Melon plants already up, must be very careful of them at this season, otherwise a small neglect will destroy them all. Therefore the beds must be constantly kept to an equal temper of heat, and air must be given to them at every opportunity, that the steam of the bed may pass off; but this must be done with great caution; for if too much cold air be admitted, it will be equally destructive to the plants; so that the great art in raising these plants early, depends upon the careful observing all the changes and alterations of the weather, and the temperature of the beds: For as the outward air is frequently

quently very cold at this time of the year, so the hasty admission of it to tender plants may soon destroy them; therefore it will be proper to place a coarse cloth before the front of those glasses, which are raised to give air, to prevent its too freely entering the bed, which may give a sudden check to the plants.

WHEN it so happens, as that by severe frost, or any other accident, your Cauliflower plants are destroyed, which were raised in the autumn, which, in very severe winters, sometimes is the case, and was formerly more often so than of late years, then you should (so soon as the weather will permit) make a gentle hot-bed, and sow some seeds thereon, to raise a new supply of plants; which, if carefully raised, will produce very good heads in about three weeks or a month after those which were raised in autumn, provided the young plants are planted upon a fresh hot-bed as soon as they are fit to remove, to bring them forward. In like manner you should also raise some cabbage plants, when your first crop has been destroyed. For want of this care to sow seeds of these after very severe winters, many times people have lost all the forward season, so have not had a supply of these things for the table till very late in the summer.

8 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

THE Asparagus beds, which were made the last month, will now begin to have some buds appear, when you must earth them the full thickness over the crown of the roots, which should be five or six inches at least; and the frames should now be put over them: but if you find the heat of the bed begin to decline, it will be necessary to add some hot dung round the sides (which, in the gardeners phrase, is called lining the beds); this will renew the heat of the bed, and bring the Asparagus forward; you should observe also to cover the glasses with mats and straw every night, and in bad weather, or when there is no appearance of sun, the covering may remain on all the day, till the Asparagus appears again through the earth with which it was last covered.

TOWARD the latter end of the month (if the season proves mild) you may transplant some Cabbage plants of the sugar-loaf kind, into the open quarters of the garden, to succeed the early ones which were planted out in November: but you may sow the ground with Spinach before the plants are planted, which will be fit to cut for the table before the Cabbage plants are grown so large as to cover it.

TRANSPLANT Carrots, Parsneps, Leeks, and Cabbages for seed, if the season proves mild;

mild; observing to hang up the Cabbages by their stalks under cover in a dry place three or four days before they are planted, that the water may drain out from between their leaves to prevent their rotting. These should be planted near a hedge, pale, or wall, where they may be sheltered from strong winds, which often break down their branches of seed in summer, when they are too much exposed thereto; but in the doing of this, you must never plant more than one sort in the same place, for where red and white Cabbages, or Savoys are suffered to produce seeds near each other, the farina of their flowers will intermix, and thereby the sorts will be degenerated, for by the not observing this method, the English gardeners seldom preserve the red Cabbages good and right in their kind long, and suppose it is owing to the soil and climate; whereas the cause of their degenerating, is from their standing near white Cabbages to seed; and the same variation frequently happens in Savoys where they are planted near Cabbages for seeds, therefore each sort should be planted by itself for seed to preserve them from varying.

MAKE some gentle hot-beds the beginning of this month, for to plant some Tansey and
Mint,

Mint, which, if carefully managed, will be fit for use all February and March; after which time the beds in the open air will supply the kitchen.

If the former month, or the beginning of this, has proved so severe as to destroy the early Radishes and Carrots, which were sown on warm borders, you must make some gentle hot-beds to sow some Radishes upon to come early, so soon as the weather will permit to do this work, to supply the table in the spring, before those can come which are now to be sown in the open air: but these hot-beds must be earthed eight or nine inches deep, otherwise there will not be depth for the roots to run down before they reach the dung, which will stop the roots from going farther. There should also be some seeds of each sort sown on warm borders in the open air as soon as the weather will permit, to succeed those sown on the hot-beds.

TRANSPLANT Endive into trenches to blanch it, when the weather is open and dry, in doing of which, you must observe to lay the trenches sloping, that the wet may pass off; and put the Endive on the side of the ridge, towards the sun, and at about six inches from the top of the ridge; thrusting the plants
into

into the earth almost to the extremity of their leaves, where there is the conveniency of a covered shed, the plants should be hung up by their roots for one night, that the wet may drain from between their leaves; this will be a good method to prevent the Endive from rotting. But in very severe winters, the Endive is frequently killed, which is not put into the trenches to blanch before the frost sets in, unless the borders where it grows are well protected from cold by covering of mats or straw, therefore those persons who desire to have Endive all the spring, should be at the expence of covering the plants in hard winters.

You may now destroy snails, and other vermin, which are at this season closely laid up in the holes of walls, and under reed-hedges, and such other places of shelter, where they may be easily taken before they get abroad.

TOWARD the end of the month, if the weather is open, there must be some more Peas and Beans put into the ground, that there may be a constant supply for the table or market from the beginning to the end of the season. There should also be some Spinach, Carrots, and Lettuce of the common or brown Dutch sorts, sown on warm borders. These sowings should be repeated every fortnight or three weeks,

12 *Toe Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

weeks, provided the weather will permit, that if the forward sowings are destroyed by frost, there may not be wanting any of these crops in the kitchen-garden in the early season.

TOWARD the end of this month, you may sow some Parsley in drills; and also some Chervil; for as these seeds lie a long time in the ground, so there will be little or no danger of their being injured by the cold.

Product of the **KITCHEN-GARDEN.**

You have now Cabbages, Savoy, Parsneps, Turneps, Carrots, Potatoes, Leeks, Onions, Garlic, Shallots, Rocambole, Beets, Borecole, &c. in plenty; as also Celery, Endive, and Rampion roots, and on hot-beds Lettuce, and all sorts of young Sallet-herbs, as Cresses, Turnep, Radish, Rape, Mustard, Coriander, Chervil, Tarragon, and Mint; and Asparagus on hot-beds made the latter end of November: you have also Skirrets, white, red, and purple Broccoli, Salsafy, Scorzonera, and large Parsley roots, Mushrooms, Sorrel, Burnet, Parsley, Sage, Rosemary, Thyme, Hyssop, Winter-Savory, Coleworts, and Sprouts from the Cabbage and Savoy-stalks, which were cut in October and November, Spinach and Cardoons, leaves of the
the

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 13

the white and card Beets, with some other Soup herbs. And under Frames you may have brown Dutch Lettuce well cabbaged, with proper Care.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

COVER the roots of all new-planted trees with mulch to guard them from the frost, provided it be not already done, or that it may have wasted; and the Fig trees which are against walls, pales, or espaliers, should be covered either with mats or reeds; which will preserve their tender shoots from being injured by frost, and cause the fruit to come much earlier in the spring, and in greater quantity; but before this is done, you should divest the branches of all the autumnal Figs, if there are any remaining on; otherwise these will decay, and infect the tender shoots, which should produce fruit the spring following. Wherever this method is practised, there should be great care taken, not to expose the trees too suddenly to the open air; but remove the coverings gradually, when the weather becomes warm; and where there are Fig trees planted in espaliers, it will be a good method to loosen the branches from the trellise, and either lay
them

14 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

them down, or tie their branches together, covering them with dry litter or peas haulm, which will preserve their branches from being killed by the frost, and hereby a good crop of Figs may be generally obtained.

You may now cut out all the dead or cankered branches from your standard fruit trees; as also such as cross each other, and are ill placed; but be careful in doing this, to make the wounded part as smooth as possible, and sloping, that the wet may not enter and be detained there, to the great prejudice of the trees.

If the season be mild, you may prune dwarf trees, and any hardy sorts of fruits, as Pears, Apples, Vines, Gooseberries, Currants, and Raspberries; but stone fruit (which was not pruned in autumn) should be deferred until the end of the next month, or the beginning of March, because if hard frost should follow soon after they are pruned, it will penetrate the wound of the tender shoots, and injure them.

In moist weather you may clear your fruit trees from moss, where-ever they are infested with it; which may now be easily scraped off with iron instruments, made hollow in such a manner as to fit the branches of the trees; but these

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 15

these instruments must not be made too sharp, lest, by being incautiously used, they should wound the bark of the trees.

CUT grafts from all the sorts of early fruits in mild weather, toward the end of this month, or the begining of next, according as the season is more or less forward, laying them in the earth under a dry wall or pale; and, if the weather should be severe, they should be covered with litter or straw to protect them from injury. The reason for cuting them so early, is to prevent their buds from swelling too much; therefore, as the winter proves the more or less severe, so you must be directed to cut the grafts sooner or later, according as the trees are disposed for buding. In the choice of these, you should prefer such as grow upon the fruitful branches, healthy trees, and that have good buds to them.

IN mild weather you must prepare such borders as are designed for planting with fruit trees the succeeding month, laying a good quantity of fresh earth therein, making it level, that it may have some time to settle before the trees are planted. You may also repair the borders about old fruit trees, which want amendment, by laying some fresh earth and well roted dung upon them; if the soil is cold
and

and moist, then the rotten dung from the old Melon and Cucumber beds, will be the most proper; but where the soil is hot, neats dung is by far the best; or where that cannot be had, rotten hogs dung is very good manure for fruit trees; these being naturally colder than any other sort of dung, will keep the earth cool about their roots in the summer season. Where-ever any of these dungs are applied to fruit trees, they should be thoroughly roted before they are laid on the borders, otherwise they will do more harm than good. But if the trees are old, it will be of little service to add this near their stems; for the roots which supply them with nourishment, are extended to a considerable distance: therefore the whole should be amended to the distance of fourteen feet from the stems, where the borders are wide enough to admit of it, that the young roots may receive nourishment therefrom.

MEND and repair all your decayed espaliers with new poles, where they want them, and fasten such places where the poles or rails are loose, with wire, which is the strongest fastening. You must also lay down and tie the branches of your fruit trees thereto with small osier twigs, but observe to train their branches regularly at proper distances, never to cross each

each other, and not to fasten them so close with the twigs as to pinch the shoots, when they shall have grown larger the following summer.

Y o u may yet plant Strawberries and Raspberries, if the weather is mild, and the ground in proper order, tho' it would have been better if done in autumn, especially if the soil be dry. Those who are curious to have early Strawberries, should now plant them in pots filled with good earth, and place them in a sheltered situation till they are rooted ; after which the pots should be plunged into a moderate hot-bed, which will bring them forward in a short time ; though it would have been much better if these had been planted into the pots in October, that they might be well rooted before they are put on the hot-bed, whereby they would be capable of bearing a much larger quantity of fruit than those which are newly transplanted ; or if they were planted into pots at this season, and kept in a shady situation all the following summer, keeping the plants always clear from runners, they will be in good order to force the next season. But where there has not been a provision made of these plants in time, the plants should be transplanted with good balls of earth to their roots, and put upon the hot-bed, and

in this case there will be no occasion for planting them in pots ; but it must be observed that the plants should have been kept clear from runners, and to single heads the foregoing summer ; for if they were permitted to send out runners or suckers from their sides, the principal roots will have been so much weakened, as not to be in a condition to produce much fruit when they are forced. The earth of these hot-beds wherein the Strawberries are planted, should be loamy and strong, but not enriched much with dung, which will only add to the luxuriance of the plants, and prevent their fruiting in plenty. These hot beds must not be kept covered too closely ; but whenever the weather will permit, the plants should have a large share of air, especially when they are in flower, otherwise the blossoms will fall away, and not produce much fruit ; at which time the plants will also require to be frequently refreshed with water, otherwise the blossoms will fall off, without having fruit succeed to them, but the waterings must be performed with discretion.

Those persons who are very curious to have early fruit in forcing-frames, must now begin to add their heat, whether it be dung or fire which they use ; but, for the earlier fruits, fire is better than dung, because the heat of

I

that

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 19

that may be kept more equal ; for the dung at this season, where it is exposed to the weather, being often damped by great snows, or too much wet, is very subject to lose its heat ; and when the trees have been forced, there must be great care taken to keep up the heat ; for if, after the trees have been forced out into blossom, they are neglected, and the air within the glasses is not kept nearly to the same temperature of heat, the blossoms will fall off, and no fruit will succeed them. There should also be the same care taken to let in fresh air whenever there are opportunities, for if they are kept too close, they seldom succeed well ; therefore it is not proper to apply the heat too early to the trees, because this month is often unfavourable to tender blossoms, and the air is generally too cold to be admitted to them ; so that, if the heat be not applied before the beginning of this month, the blossoms will not appear till the beginning of the next month, when the weather is generally less severe than in this ; so that there will be less danger of miscarriage, and the fruit will be ripe almost as early as those which were forced all December.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; L'Effacherie, Colmar, Virgoleuse, Ambrette, Epine d'Hyver, St. Germain, St. Augustine, Winter Beurre, Martin Sec, Winter Boncretien, Citron d'Hyver, Roufflette d'Hyver, Franc-Real, Bugi, or Bergamot de Pasque, Bergamot d'Holland, Muscat Alleman, Ronville, Portail, Besi de Caiffoy, and Besi de Chaumontelle from espaliers, which will keep near two months longer, than those from good aspected walls; and for baking, the Cadillac, Black Pear of Worcester, English Warden, and the Pickering.

APPLES; Golden Pippin, Nonpareil, French Pippin, Golden Russet, Wheeler's Russet, Pile's Russet, Harvey Apple, Kentish Pippin, Holland Pippin, Aromatic Pippin, Kirton Pippin, Winter Pearmain, Monstrous Rennet, Pear Russet, Aromatic Russet, John Apple, Winter Queening, Pomme Roy, Pomme d'Apis, Winter Gilliflower, with many others of less note; as also Nuts, Almonds, Services, Medlars, and Grapes, where they have been carefully preserved, by cutting the bunches with a knot or joint of the vine, and hanging them

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 21

them in rows, in a dry warm room, at such distance as not to touch each other, and that the air may pass freely between them, otherwise they will soon grow mouldy and rot. By this method Grapes have been preserved good until the end of February, but it must be the Frontinaic, and other late sorts, which should be thus treated.

*Work to be done in the PLEASURE GARDEN
and WILDERNESS.*

IN frosty weather you should cover the beds of Ranunculus's, Anemonies, Hyacinths, and other choice flowers: such of them as are not come up above-ground may be covered with tanners bark, peas haulm, or some other light covering, which will admit the air, but prevent the frost from penetrating the earth: but such of the beds of flowers as are come up, must be arched over with hoops, and covered with mats or cloths; for if they are not protected from the frost at this season, their leaves will be killed, whereby the roots are many times destroyed; but in mild weather they should be uncovered, and exposed to the air as much as possible; for if they are too closely covered, they are apt to take damp and mould, which

frequently causes them to decay: wherever this covering is practised, it should be continued until the weather is become warm, otherwise it is better not to use it; for by being covered, the plants will become tender, and so will be less able to resist the cold, than those which have been only exposed to the open air.

THE Hyacinths, Narcissus's, and other bulbous-rooted flowers, whose leaves do not yet appear above ground, may be covered over with tanners bark, which will prevent the frost from penetrating the earth, which in severe winters, where there is no covering, frequently destroys the roots. And in wet land where the beds are raised much above the paths, there should be tan, litter, or dung, laid in the paths to raise them, otherwise the frost will enter through the sides of the beds to the roots, and greatly weaken or kill those on the sides of the beds. This method is constantly practised by the florists in Holland, who preserve their flower roots much better than the English gardeners generally do, though the winters there are commonly more severe than in England.

COVER all pots and tubs of seedling flowers in hard frosts, and also from great snows, which are very injurious to them, especially to the
seedling

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 23

seedling Hyacinths, Persian Iris's, Spring Cyclamen, Ranunculus's, Anemonies, Crown Imperials, Narcissus's, and some other bulbous and tuberous-rooted flowers, which, though hardy enough to resist the cold of our climate, when their roots are fully grown, yet, while young, are in danger of being destroyed by severe frost. And where these pots or tubs are not plunged into the earth, there should be tan, litter, or dung, laid about them, to prevent the frost from entering through their sides.

IN mild weather you may plant such roots of Ranunculus's, Anemonies, and Tulips, as were kept out of the ground to retard them, that they may succeed those which were planted in Autumn; but this should not be done when the earth is over wet, which would endanger the rotting of their roots; and if there should happen to fall much rain after they are planted, or hard frost should soon after follow, the beds must be covered with mats, straw or peas haulm, otherwise the roots will be in great danger of perishing.

TURN over your heaps of compost, that the frost may mellow them, and break the clods: the oftener these are turned, the sooner they will be fit for use. You should also, at

24 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

this season, make new heaps of compost in mild weather, when there is more leisure for doing it, than when the season is farther advanced, and many other necessary works require attention; therefore at such times when the labourers have not full employment in the garden, the preparing of composts for the pots and borders should not be neglected, as these should have time to lie and sweeten before they are used. For without this, there can be small hopes of having choice flowers in any tolerable degree of perfection.

TOWARD the end of this month, if the season be mild, you must pick off all decayed leaves from your Auriculas, and take the earth out from the tops of the pots as low as you can conveniently, without disturbing their roots; then fill the pots with fresh rich earth up to the stems of the plants, but you should be careful not to let any earth fall in amongst their leaves; this will greatly strengthen their flowers, and prepare their offsets with fibres for parting. You must also observe to place the pots where they may be sheltered from frosts, either under glasses, or by covering of mats or cloths, for the frost will blight and destroy the buds, which are forming in the center of the plants; but you must let them have as much free air
as

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 25

as possible in mild weather; for if they are drawn, it will weaken their flowers; nor should they be kept too dry, for tho' they require to be guarded from great rains, yet they should have the benefit of moderate showers, in mild weather, which will be of great service to them. So that the best method, where there is not conveniency of frames to set them in at this season, is to place the pots as close together as possible, in some well-sheltered situation, in the flower nursery, as soon as they are fresh earthed; and then make an awning of hoops over them, that they may be covered with mats or tarpaulins in bad weather, which may be easily taken off when the weather is favourable, that the plants may enjoy as much free air as possible in mild weather.

YOUR choice Carnations should also in like manner be guarded from heavy rains, snow, and severe frost, which are often very destructive to them; but these must also have as much free air as possible in mild weather, otherwise they will draw up weak, and so will not blow strong. At this season you must also be careful to protect them from vermin, which, for want of other food, will destroy them; particularly rats and mice often make great havock

havock with them ; and where hares or rabbits can come to them, they generally make clear work, seldom leaving any in their reach. The sparrows also, at this season, often peck out the heart or inner leaves of these plants, if they are not prevented.

AT the latter end of this month you must provide some new dung, which should be thrown on an heap to warm for about ten or twelve days, and turned over two or three times, to mix the parts well together, in the same way as is practised for Cucumber beds, to make some hot-beds to sow the choicest sorts of annual flowers upon, as the Amaranthus Tricolor, Cockscorn, Globe Amaranthus, Diamond Ficoides, double Stramonium, some of the sorts of the annual tender Ketmia Melongena, and other tender kinds, that they may be brought forward to flower ; for the plants which are raised early will be stronger, than those which are sown later in the season ; and by this method you may expect to obtain good seeds from all the sorts, whereas many of them will not produce any in this climate, when they are not brought forward in the spring.

PRUNE up wilderness trees, and flowering shrubs where they grow too much out of shape, but their shoots must not be shortened for that will prevent their flowering, and dig up the ground in wilderness quarters, observing to clear it from the roots of all hurtful weeds. This digging will be of great service to the trees, and add a neatness to the wilderness. But in doing of this, you must be careful not to disturb the roots of those wood plants which are intermixed under the trees for the sake of their flowers.

You may yet sow the seeds of Auriculas and Polyanthus's, in mild weather, if it was neglected in October and November, and where the pots or tubs in which the seeds are sown, are guarded from too much wet, the plants will often come up in good time. But if they should not come up the first spring, the earth should not be disturbed, for sometimes the plants will come up in autumn or the following spring, provided the seeds are not buried too deep in the ground.

Plants now in Flower in the open Air.

WINTER Aconite, Helleborafter or Bears-foot, True Black Hellebore, or Christmas
Rose,

28 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Jan.

Rose, some single Anemonies, Blue and White Winter Hyacinths, Early Starry Hyacinth, Polyanthus's, Primroses, Single Snowdrops, Black Hellebore with green flowers, Round-leav'd Spring Cyclamen, Hearts-ease, or Pansies, Yellow Alpine Alysson, Cypress Narcissus, with many double flowers, Periwinkles, and, sometimes in a warm situation, the Duke van Tol Tulip.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

LAURUSTINUS two sorts, Glaftenbury Thorn, Mezereon, Spurge-laurel, Strawberry tree, Manna Ash, Cornelian Cherry, Clematis Bætica, Alaternus's, Box-tree, Hamamelis, or Witch Hazel, Phillyrea, Shrubby Baccharis of Virginia, Pyracantha in fruit, St. Peter's-wort shrub in fruit, and some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

WHITE and Black Maiden-hair, Golden Maiden-hair, Smallage roots, Birthwort roots, Arum roots, Asarabacca, Swallowwort roots, Asparagus roots, Spleenwort, Masterwort roots, Beet roots, Bistort roots, Briony roots, Bugloss roots,

roots, Dwarf Elder roots, Lesser Celandine, or Pilewort roots, Iris, or Oris roots, Cypress Cones, Dragon roots, Elecampane root, Eryngo root, Dropwort roots, Male and Female Fern roots, Fennel roots, Greater Gentian roots, Liquorice roots, Ivy berries, Monks Rhubarb roots, Ali-fander roots, Dock roots, Henbane roots, Mandrake roots, Spignel roots, Piony roots, Butterbur roots, Parsley roots, Hogs Fennel roots, Valerian roots, Meadow Saxifrage roots, Pine tree Cones, Solomon's Seal roots, Maddar roots, Orchis or Satyrion roots, White Saxifrage roots, Skirret roots, Tormentil roots. All these roots, are much better for use, when they are taken up before they begin to shoot; for after they have shot out new fibres, they either grow hard or sticky, or soon shrink when taken up, and lose all their virtue.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

IF this month should prove hard frost, you must carry on dung upon the ground where you intend to transplant young trees or stocks in the spring; you may also lay some dung between the rows of young trees where it is wanted, that it may be ready to be dug into the ground when the frost is gone out of it.

You may now trim and plash hedges, but it is better to delay it until the frost is over, because where trees are greatly wounded, the frost often penetrates, and much injures them.

WHEN the weather is mild, you should continue trenching the ground where you intend to plant young trees in the two following months; and prepare some beds for sowing kernels of fruit trees, or mast and berries of forest trees, or flowering shrubs, which must be sown the latter end of this month, or the beginning of the next. You should also continue digging the ground between the rows of trees in the nursery, when the weather is favourable, being careful not to injure their roots; but you should shorten all such roots as extend too far from the trees, which will cause them to put out new fibres nearer the stems, and thereby render them much safer to transplant: this should be particularly practised to all the sorts of ever-green trees, otherwise they will be unsafe to remove in a few years.

IF frosty weather you should carefully look to your young trees in the nursery, to prevent their being eaten by hares, rabbits, or other animals,

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 31

animals, which, in hard seasons, often eat down young trees, and also disbark large trees and shrubs.

IN open weather you may trim up your hardy forest trees in the nursery, but be careful to leave some small shoots on the stems of all young trees, to detain the sap for the augmentation of their stems, otherwise they will be too weak to support their heads; but these should not be left in too great quantity, lest you prevent the upright growth of the trees.

YOU may, toward the latter end of this month, (if the weather is mild) transplant stocks for fruit trees; as also young forest trees, where it was neglected to be done in the autumn; for the sooner it is done, it will be the better, provided the soil be dry; for when it is done late in the spring, if it should prove dry weather, they will be in danger of being destroyed, especially if there is not convenience to water them.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

IF this month proves very severe (as it often happens) you must be careful to keep the frost out of your green-house; for if it reaches the

the earth of your Orange trees, it will cause all the fruit to drop off, and many times a great part of the leaves also; therefore it is very useful to have a flue contrived under the pavement, in the front of the green-house, which may be used in very hard winters, when it will be very difficult to keep the frost out of the house, where this is wanting; but where there is no such contrivance, the glasses in front should be closely covered with mats, reeds, or straw; and you should light six or eight large candles to burn in the green-house every night; which are much better than burning of charcoal, as is by some practised, which is equally pernicious to plants as animals, where the air is confined, as in green-houses it must be, when they are closely shut. Besides, in great thaws, when the air is filled with moisture, which occasions a great damp in green-houses, it will be of great use to make two or three gentle fires where there are flues to rarefy and warm the air, which otherwise often occasions the leaves of the trees to grow mouldy and drop off.

You must also observe to pick off all dead leaves, or such as are mouldy, which, if suffered to remain on, would infect those which grow nearer them, and also corrupt the air of the

the house, to the prejudice of your plants; besides, this adds a neatness to the house, and renders the plants more beautiful as also more healthful. In mild weather you must let air into the house, without which the plants will alter their colour, and sometimes cast their leaves; but this must be done cautiously at this season. You must also refresh them with water as often as you find it necessary, but give it to them sparingly; for it is better to give it to them often, and in small quantities, than to over water them at this time of the year, because it may prove very hurtful to them, especially if bad weather should set in soon after, and no sun appear in the day time to dry the damp, as is often the case at this season, with hard frost, when there may be a necessity to keep the house closely shut up for several days; so that the moisture of the earth in the tubs and pots, will greatly add to the damp of the air.

THE hardy succulent plants, must have as much air as possible in mild weather: for if they are too closely shut up, they often cast their leaves, and appear unsightly, especially the Sedums, Cotyledons, Cacalia's, and Mesembrianthem, which, when drawn too much, will not appear handsome, nor produce near so

D

many

many flowers, as those which are kept more airy.

YOUR Anana's, or Pine apples, which begin now to shew their fruit, must be carefully looked after, observing to refresh them frequently with water, for want of which, they are often starved, and the fruit is rendered small: but this water should be placed in the stove at least twelve hours before it is used, that it may acquire an equal warmth with the air of the house, otherwise it will be too cold for them. You must also keep up the warmth of the house, and not suffer the heat to decline at this season, lest you starve the fruit; and the tan must also be kept of a proper warmth, by stirring of it up, and adding fresh tan where it is wanting; for if the plants have not a proper heat to their roots, they will not put out large fruit: but, at the same time, I must caution against the keeping the stove too warm, which will force the fruit too much, and render it very small; and this often occasions the young plants to shew fruit a whole year before their time, so that their fruit is exceeding small and of no value.

THE Coffee trees, and other woody plants which are placed in the bark-bed in the stove, must also be often refreshed with water, and
their

their dead or mouldy leaves constantly taken off; and where any of the leaves have contracted filth, it should be carefully washed off; as should insects, wherever the plants are infested with them, otherwise they will increase and spread over all the plants in the house: this should be performed with a wet sponge.

IF the bark in the bed has settled unequally (as it often happens) so that the pots do not keep their position, it will be proper to take out the pots from the tan-bed in a fine day, and stir the bark, adding a little fresh tan thereto (which should have been in shelter a week or ten days to drain off the moisture) and then plunge the pots down again: this will renew the heat of the bed, and be very useful to the plants, but the plants must not be exposed to the open air while this is doing, at this Season of the year.

THE tender sorts of Aloes, Cereus's, Euphorbiums, and Melon thistles, should now have very little water given to them; for moisture at this season is very injurious to them, especially where the air of the house is not kept in a due temperature of heat.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

DOUBLE Nasturtium, Phylica, Solidago with a branching corymbus, Geranium with a scarlet flower, Indian Yellow, Spanish and Arabian Jasmines, African Gladiolus, Cacalia with succulent leaves, Osteospermum populi folio, Lantanas of two or three sorts, Cestrum, Cassia's, Hermannias, Papaya, Tarconanthus, Shrubby Baccharis with sawed leaves, Aloe Succotrina, Aloe Margaritifera major & minor, Cushion Aloe, Hedgehog Aloe, Partridge-breast Aloe, Tongue Aloes of three or four sorts, common Barbadoes Aloe, small herbaceous Aloe, African Mountain Aloe, Cobweb Aloe, Arctotus's of several sorts, Ascyron Balearicum, Canary Campanula, Mesembryanthemums of several sorts, Sedum arborescens, Crassulas, Malpighia mali Punici facie, Euphorbiums, Basella, the smaller Leonurus, Persian Cyclamens, Barbadoes flower Fence, Hibiscus, China Rose, some sorts of Apocynums, Crinum, or Lily Asphodel, Pancratiums, Shrubby African and Grass leaved Marygold, Black flowering Lotus, Diosma two sorts,

Jan. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 37

forts, Shrubby African Mallow, Shrubby African Lavatera, Shrubby African Groundfel with stiff leaves, and with fleshy succulent leaves, Amaryllis, Myrtle of Ceylon, Ixia, African Wood Sorrel, Amomum Plinii in fruit, with Oranges and Lemons in fruit.





F E B R U A R Y.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

IF the weather be mild in this month, there is a great deal of business to be done in the kitchen-garden, which, if omitted, will be of bad consequence, most of the principal crops being now to be sown or planted; which, if deferred later in the year, seldom succeed so well, especially upon dry land.

You must now dig and prepare your ground for Carrots, Parsneps, Radishes, Spinach, Beets, Beans, Peas, Parsley, and Cabbage Lettuce, which should now be sown; and where it is only for the supply of a family, there should not be too much of each sown at once; for it is a much better way to sow three or four times of each sort, (except the Parsley, Beets and Parsneps) at about a fortnight

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 39

night or three weeks distance from each other, that there may be a continuation of them for the kitchen, than to trust to one sowing, which will last but a short time; especially the Radishes, Beans, Pease and Lettuce; but if the other sorts do succeed, one sowing of each will be sufficient, unless where small young Carrots are wanted, as long in the season as they can be procured, and if Spinach is desired great part of the year, then their seeds should be sown at different times, allowing a fortnight or three weeks interval between each sowing.

Sow young Salleting upon moderate hot-beds, and in mild weather, the seeds may be sown on warm borders near walls, pales, or hedges, to succeed that which was the last sown; for at this season, there should be a supply sown every week, which is as long as each sowing will continue fit for use, before it will be too large.

THIS is also the season for sowing Scorzenera, Salsafy, and Skirrets, (for the first crop; but the general crop must be sown much later; for these which are sown early, are very apt to run up to seed; but as in some families these roots are required as long as they can be procured, so they must be sown at

different seasons) that there may be some roots for use early in the autumn, before the general crop is fit for use. You may now sow Cornfallet, large rooted Parsley, Summer and Winter Savory, Marigolds, and Sorrel, with most other hardy plants; these are best sown in separate spots or beds, and afterwards thined to the proper distance which each requires; for where they are sown with other crops, they do not thrive so well; nor should they be left too close, for then the plants will draw each other up weak, and become small. But this is not to be understood of the common Parsley, which is frequently sown in drills, for the more ready cutting of it and keeping it clear from weeds; though the large rooted Hamburgh Parsley should be sown thin as Carrots, and hoed out in the same manner.

MAKE moderate hot-beds for sowing some Cauliflower seeds, for summer plants to supply the kitchen, which will come for use after those which were sown in August are gone; but these are only fit for a moist soil, for in dry ground they seldom produce large heads. However, it is necessary to have them for a family, where the continuance of these things are

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 41

are required, though they seldom pay the market gardener.

PLANT Garlic, Shallots, Rocambole, and Cives ; as also Onions, to draw up for Scallions in April, when the dry Onions will be almost gone, and the Michaelmas Onions will be too small for many kitchen uses.

IF the last month was so severe, that little work could be done in the garden, then there will be a necessity for forwarding business in this, provided the season is favourable ; therefore now should be planted out some of the sugar-loaf and long-sided Cabbages, to succeed those which were planted in November. You must also transplant your Cauliflower plants out of the winter beds, to the places where they are to grow ; towards the end of the month, and if the season is forward, you may slip some of your old Artichoke stocks if the shoots are forward enough, and plant out some of the clearest and most promising plants for a new plantation ; for on dry soils these slips should be planted early in the season, otherwise they do not succeed so well. These young plants will produce fruit in autumn, after those on the old stocks are gone. The particular directions for doing this are exhibited in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY.

CONTINUE

CONTINUE to plant Beans, and sow Peas, every fortnight or three weeks, that there may be no want of these things in the kitchen during the season: but now it is proper to plant only the Windsor, and other large kinds of Beans; and some of the larger sorts of Peas should now be sown, particularly the Spanish Morotto, which is a plentiful bearing sort, and a good Pea for eating; these for the common use of the family; but some of the Hotspur Peas should also be sown for the principal table, for these are by much the best Pea to eat green, as may also some of the small Mazagan Beans be planted, where they are required, for some persons prefer this to every other sort, so that they chuse to have them continued the whole season of Beans.

THIS is a proper season for planting of Liquorice. The ground where this is to be planted, should be trenched three or four spits deep, that the roots may more easily run down; for the goodness of Liquorice depends on the length of the roots. The gardeners, who cultivate this plant, commonly sow a crop of Onions on the ground, the same spring when they plant the sets; and the keeping of the ground clean from weeds is done by hoeing the Onions, and these are no prejudice to the Liquorice,

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 43

quorice, as they will be drawn off before the Liquorice shoots much above ground.

MAKE new hot-beds for Asparagus to succeed those which were made the last month; for otherwise there will be a want in the kitchen, one of these beds seldom continuing much longer than a fortnight to produce good buds: so that in this month there should be two beds made at about sixteen or eighteen days distance, that they may succeed each other regularly.

THE Cucumber and Melon plants, which were raised the last month, will now be fit to transplant; therefore there must be new beds made for them, which should be well wrought; but the plants must not be planted therein, until the violent heat of the bed is over, which seldom lasts above a week, especially if the dung had been well prepared before it was used. At this season you must attend very closely to your hot-beds, to admit fresh air to the plants as often as the weather will permit; but this must be managed with great caution, if you would have them succeed; for a small neglect at this season will destroy all your plants, and put you greatly backward. There must also be some seeds of Cucumbers now sown, to succeed those which are
planted

planted out; for the very early plants seldom continue long in bearing, if they do succeed; therefore it is very necessary to have a succession. And this month is full early to sow Melons for the first crop, though by many gardeners they are sown in the former.

THE Mushroom beds must now be carefully guarded from great rains and snow, which, if they are not well defended from, will chill the beds, and destroy all the spawn, so that they will never recover it: therefore it is the surest method to have one or two beds covered with frames, or made under a shed thatched over with straw, which will protect them from bad weather; so that a good quantity of Mushrooms may be obtained in the worst seasons by this method.

PLANT some Kidney-beans upon a moderate hot-bed for an early crop; observing, when the plants are come up to give them air, whenever the weather will permit; otherwise they will draw up weak, and not produce fruit. The best sort for this purpose, are the Dwarf White, or the Battersea Bean, which never run much to haulm, and are plentiful bearers. Indeed, most people plant, for this purpose, the upright, or, as some call them, the Tree Kidney-bean, whose seeds are black and white; this sort is a plentiful bearer, but is
by

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 45

by no means so good for the table as the other, it being soft, and of a rank taste.

IF the weather be favourable, toward the end of this month, you must plant your Cos, Silesia, and Imperial Lettuces, from the beds or borders where they grew in the winter; but some of the plants in the borders should be left to remain for cabbaging, because they will come earlier than those which are removed. You should also sow some seeds of these sorts upon a spot of good ground, in a warm situation, or on a moderate hot-bed, to come after the winter Lettuces are gone.

THE latter end of this month you may sow some Cabbages and Savoys for winter use; but these are not designed for the main crop, but only for a few to come early in the autumn: and upon hot-beds, or warm borders, must be sown some small Sallet herbs, as Lettuce, Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, Turnep, &c. that there may be a constant supply of these things for the table.

Sow some celery seeds upon a bed of rich earth, in a warm situation, to come up early; but there should be very little sown at this season, because it will soon pipe, and become sticky, when fit for use; so that no more should be planted out of this sowing, than can be used
in

in a month or five weeks, which is as long as this early crop of Celery will continue fit for use; and you should now sow Asparagus seed in a bed of good earth, for to raise plants against the next year to make fresh plantations.

TRANSPLANT Cabbages, Savoys, Leeks, Parsneps, Carrots, and Beets, for seed, if it was not done the former month, observing (as was there directed) to hang up the Cabbages and Savoys in a dry place for five or six days, that the wet may drain out from between their leaves, which, if left in, would rot them. You may also plant some Endive for seed, if it was omitted before, and some of the strongest plants of Celery should also be left for seed.

PLANT Potatoes and Jerusalem Artichokes, toward the end of the month, if the weather is inclinable to be good, and the ground dry, otherwise it will be better to defer this work a month longer, observing to plough or trench the ground deep, that the roots may be placed at least six or eight inches below the surface, otherwise they will not succeed so well: these should have a loamy soil; and when the roots are placed in the trenches, there should be some dung laid over them, especially in poor ground,

ground, otherwise the roots will not be large. This must be understood for the Potatoe; for the Jerusalem Artichoke is so very hardy, as to multiply too fast in any soil or situation.

DUNG and trench the ground well, where you intend to plant Asparagus, letting it remain in ridges until the season for planting, which will be the latter end of next month; but in doing of this, you should be careful to make the bottom of each trench level, before you put in the dung, which must also be laid level: otherwise when you come to make the drills for laying in the plants, the dung will be turned up in those places where it lies shallow.

THE Cauliflower plants which were placed under bell or hand glasses in October last, should, toward the end of this month, be parted, leaving only one of the strongest plants under each glass, if you intend to have large heads, but many people now leave two plants remaining to flower; but where this is practised, they cannot be so long covered with the glasses as where one plant is left: so that they cannot be protected from the frosts which often happen in March, when, if the glasses are not over the plants every night, they will be in danger of suffering; nor will the flowers come
so

so early, nor their heads be so large; therefore it is bad management to leave two plants, when it is certain one early large Cauliflower will be worth more than three small ones. But in doing of this, you must be careful not to disturb the roots of those plants which are left; and when the plants which are left are grown so large as to press against the glasses, you should raise the earth into a border about the stems of the plants two feet and a half broad, and five or six inches high, that the glasses may be advanced so as not to crush the leaves of the plants: by doing of this, the glasses may be kept over the plants in bad weather, until the middle or end of March, which is often of great use to them when the season is bad, and hereby they will be brought earlier to flower. When this is done, great care must be had that the earth doth not get into the heart of the plants, which will greatly injure, if not destroy them.

THE Peas and Beans, which were sown in autumn, and have stood through the winter, will now begin to advance; therefore the ground between them should be hoed, and the earth drawn up to their stems; which will strengthen them, and guard their stems from the injury of frosts; but this should be done
in

in a dry day, lest the moisture of the earth should rot the tender stems of the plants.

TOWARD the end of this month, you may sow some Purslane seeds upon a moderate hot-bed, which will be fit for use in April; but this is earlier than the generality of people care to eat it, yet in some families it is required so soon.

LOOK well to snails and other vermin, which may be destroyed in the holes of walls, and behind the stems of wall fruit trees, &c. for if they escape till the next month they will get abroad, and make great havock in the kitchen-garden. If your early fruit trees against the walls begin to open their flowers, they must be carefully covered with mats, reeds, or some other coverings; otherwise they will be in danger of suffering by frosts, or cold winds, which frequently happen at this season. But where any of these coverings are used, it must be done with great care, so as not to bruise or rub off the buds or blossoms, and also to remove the coverings at all times in mild weather, otherwise the shoots will draw weak, and the trees will suffer more thereby, than from the inclemency of the season, when exposed thereto.

YOU may now plant Hops, dig the ground and prune the roots of the old Hop grounds,

E

being

being careful not to injure the buds of the plants which now begin to swell.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CABBAGES, Savoy, Borecole, Broccoli, Carrots, Parsneps, Turneps, Red Beets, Skirrets, Scorzonera, Salsafy, Cardoons, Coleworts, Spinach, Potatoes, Jerusalem Artichokes, Onions, Leeks, Garlick, Rocambole, Shallots, Sage, Parsley, Sorrel, Sprouts from the stems of Cabbages and Savoy; and, on the hot-beds, Mint, Tansy, and Farragon, where they were planted early in January; and, in some warm borders, there are Radishes which were sown in autumn: upon hot-beds, all sorts of small Sallet herbs, as Lettuce, Cresses, Coriander, Turnep, Rape, and Mustard; Mushrooms on the beds which have been carefully defended from the wet and frost; you have also Endive and Celery, for Soups, as also Chervil, which is, by many persons, greatly esteemed: and on the hot-beds, made in December, you have Asparagus, which, towards the middle of this month, when there begins to be more sunshine to colour it, will be very good; you have also many sorts of pot-herbs, and aromatic plants, as Winter Savory, Hyssop, Thyme, Laven-

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 51

Lavender, Rosemary, Pot-marjoram, and Burnet; also the leaves of the Chard-beet.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

YOU may now continue to prune such of your fruit trees as were not before pruned, either against walls, espaliers, or standards, observing to prune the more hardy sorts first, and let the tender kinds alone till last, when there will be less danger of their suffering by cold. And where any trees are too luxuriant, they should be the last pruned; but those which are now pruned should not be nailed to the wall till the beginning of next month, for the branches standing from the wall will keep their flower buds from opening too soon.

THE Fig trees, which were covered in frosty weather to protect their tender branches from injury, should be opened in warm weather to admit fresh air; otherwise they will be in danger of growing mouldy, which would decay them. But in frosty weather they must be covered again, otherwise these will be in more danger of having the tender branches and the fruit destroyed, than those which were never covered.

WHEREVER the frames of your espaliers are decayed, and have not been repaired the

former months, it should be no longer deferred, because the buds of the fruit trees will now begin to swell, and thereby be in danger of rubbing off; therefore these frames should always be repaired when the trees are pruned, that their branches may be fastened thereto, otherwise they will be in danger of breaking by strong winds. And such of your trees as have been trained to the espaliers already, must now be pruned, if it is not before done, and fastened thereto regularly, and at their proper distances, that when their leaves and shoots come out, there may be no confusion.

TRANSPLANT all sorts of fruit trees, where they are wanting, this being the most proper season for moist land (in which it is not so well to plant in autumn); but you must observe to work the ground well, and break the clods before planting, that the earth may the better join to every part of the roots. The heads of these trees should also be left on until they begin to push, when they must be carefully cut down after the manner directed in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY, under the article Planting.

THE latter end of this month (if the season be mild) you must begin to graft Pears, Plums, Cherries and other hardy kinds of fruit; being
very

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 53

very careful that they are well clayed or covered with the composition directed in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY, under the article Grafting, that the wind cannot enter to the graft, upon which chiefly depends your success. Where grafts are wanting of fruit trees, they should be cut off the beginning of this month, and layed in the ground till they are wanted; for as their buds will now begin to swell, so if they are left any longer upon the trees, they will be so forward as to be in danger of uniting with the stocks.

You may now sow the kernels and stones of hardy fruits for stocks, to bud and graft the more generous kinds upon, observing to cover them equally with earth, that none may appear above-ground to entice the mice or other vermin to them, which often destroy whole beds of seeds, if they are not prevented. It will also be proper to have some traps for mice, placed on the beds, that if these vermin should approach, they may be taken before they attack the seeds.

IN moist weather, clear your fruit trees from moss (where they are infested with it); which, at this season, may be easily done with an iron instrument shaped like an hoe, and hollowed in the middle to the size of the branches, which are to be scraped; so that there should be three

sizes of these instruments, which will be sufficient for all the different branches; and the moss being tender at this time, may be easily rubbed off.

LOOK carefully after bullfinches to destroy them; for, at this season, they do great mischief to all sorts of fruit trees, by pecking off their buds; so that where they are not molested, they often destroy all the fruit of a garden in two or three days.

THE early fruit frame, or forcing frame, must now be duly attended, to give them air, as the season may require; as also to keep up the heat, without which the tender fruit will drop off, and come to nothing.

YOU must now look carefully to the Strawberries which are in hot-beds, observing to let them have a large share of air, as also to refresh them with water; otherwise the blossoms will drop off, and there will be very little fruit produced. You may also, in this month, make new plantations of Strawberries, Raspberries, Gooseberries and Currants, if it was omitted in the autumn, which is by far the best season for this work, especially on dry soils; for those plants which are removed in autumn, will have their roots so well established in the ground, as to be in little danger of suffering by drought in
the

the spring; whereas those which are now planted, will require constant waterings if the spring proves dry, otherwise they will fail.

FRUITS in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; Winter Boncretien, Bessy de Cassoy, Citron d'Hyver, Winter Ruffelet, Bugi, or Bergamot de Pasque, Lord Cheyne's Green Pear, Portail, Double Fleur, Saint Lezin, Carmelite, Saint Martial; and for baking, the Cadillac, Union, or Pickering, English Warden, and Black Pear of Worcester.

APPLES; Rennet Grise, Aromatick Pippin, Golden Ruffets, Nonpareil, Golden Pippin, Holland Pippin, French Pippin, Kentish Pippin, Stone Pippin, John Apple, Harvey Apple, Pile's Ruffet, Leather-coat Ruffet, Wheeler's Ruffet, Winter Pearmain, Pomme d'Api, Haute bonne, with some others of less note.

Work to be done in the **PLEASURE-GARDEN.**

I.F the weather is mild, you may now plant out your choice Carnations into the pots where they are to flower; in doing of which, you should not take too much of the earth from their roots; and, when they are planted, it will be proper to place the pots in a warm

situation (but not too near walls and pales, which will draw them up weak); and arch them over with hoops, that in bad weather they may be covered with mats; for, at this season, they should acquire strength before the heat comes on, otherwise they will not produce large flowers.

You may yet sow Auricula and Polyanthus seeds in tubs or pots of light rich earth, placing them where they may have the morning sun till April, when they must be removed into a more shady situation, there to remain during the summer season. These seeds should be very slightly covered with earth; for if they are buried too deep, they often lie a year before they come up, and frequently miscarry; therefore some persons never cover the seeds, but leave them to be washed into the ground by the rain.

If your Auriculas in pots were not fresh earthed the last month, that now should be done, in the manner directed in January; for now their flower-buds will begin to shew apace, so that if it be not done in a short time, their flowers will not be improved by it; and, in frosty weather, these flowers must be covered with mats to prevent their tender flower-buds

buds from being injured, otherwise they will not flower strong.

STIR the surface of the ground of your flower-beds, and clear them from weeds, moss, and whatever filth may appear thereon; which will be very serviceable to the flowers, and add a neatness to the garden.

DIG and prepare your ground in the flower-nursery for sowing of seeds, and to receive plants the next month, when you will have much business of different kinds to do; so that if you do not get things in forwardness this month, you will be so much hurried in the next, that many things must be omitted, or but slightly performed. Therefore it is a good method to dig the ground at all leisure times, laying it in trenches, which will be of great service in sweetening and mellowing the ground, and then it will be always ready for sowing and planting.

TRANSPLANT Canterbury Bells, French Honeyuckles, Daies, Rose Campions, Foxgloves, Pinks, Sweet-Williams, Perennial Catchfly, Double Raged Robins, Bachelors-buttons, Gentianellas, Hepaticas, Campanulas, Thrift, Scarlet Lychnis, Columbines, Starworts, Golden-rods, with many other fibrous-rooted plants, into the borders of your pleasure-garden,

garden, where they are designed to flower; but this is better if it is performed in October, where the ground is dry, because the plants will have taken root, and obtain strength, before the dry weather of the spring comes on, and so will produce a greater quantity of flowers, and will not require to be watered in dry weather.

IN dry frosty nights you must cover your beds of choice Ranunculuses, Anemonies, and Tulips, with mats, to protect them from the injury of the weather; otherwise they will be in danger of spoiling, at least their flowers will not be so fair, nor numerous; and many times the roots are destroyed by frost at this season. Where this is not practised, the frost often pinches the buds of the forward Anemonies, so as to destroy the middle of the flowers, which the Gardeners call the thrum, whereby the finest double flowers are rendered single, which is a very great disappointment; and if the roots were purchased, the persons who sold them are often blamed for having cheated the purchaser, when it is entirely owing to the neglect of covering them.

You may now transplant all sorts of hardy flowering trees and shrubs, as Lilacs, Laburnums,

nums, Bladder Senas, Scorpion Senas, Roses, Honey-suckles, Jasmines, &c. and most sorts of forest trees may now be transplanted with safety; but many of the evergreens, designed for the spring planting, should not be removed till the beginning of April, when they are just ready to push out their buds, which is the safest season to transplant them in.

PLANT Dutch Box for edgings to borders: but it is a better season in October, especially for dry ground, because it will be firmly rooted before the drought of the spring, which is often very destructive to such edgings as are late planted, especially if they are not duly watered.

BREAK up your gravel walks, and turn them, where they begin to be mossy, and require turning to make them clean; but do not rake them until the beginning or middle of next month, where they are not wanted for use, by which time they will be well settled.

THE latter end of this month you should rake and clean the quarters of your wilderness, because the flowers which are under the trees will now begin to blow; so that there is a necessity of making the place clean, that it may appear lightly. The edges of the grass walks

walks should also be cut by a line, that they may be even; and the water-tables on the sides of the walks should be dug and raked, that they may be clear from weeds and moss.

YOUR grass walks, lawns, &c. must now be duly rolled, when the ground is soft; for unless this is constantly performed, the grass will not be fine. Make hot-beds for your tender annual flowers, which require to be brought forward early in the spring, which otherwise are in danger of not ripening their seeds; as the *Amaranthuses*, *Amaranthoides*, Double flowering *Stramonium*, Double-striped *Balsamine*, with some others. You must also plant some *Tuberoses* on a hot-bed, to come early in the summer, provided you did not do it the last month. You may now sow the double *Larkspur* on warm dry borders, and these early-sown flowers will be stronger and more double (if they succeed) than those which are sown later. The seeds of *China Starworts* must be now sown in a warm border of light earth, or upon a very moderate hot-bed, just to bring up the plants; then they should have a large share of air every day, that they may not be drawn up weak.

*Plants now in Flower in the P L E A S U R E -
G A R D E N.*

WINTER Aconite, Helleboraster or Bears-foot, True Black Hellebore, Green-flowered Black Hellebore, Snowdrops, several sorts of Spring Crocuses, Single Anemonies, Spring Cyclamen, Great Snowdrop, Early White and Blue Hyacinths, Early Starry Hyacinth with white and blue flowers, Persian Iris, Hepaticas, Single Wall-flower, Early Tulips, Polyanthus, Fennel-leaved Perennial Adonis, Dwarf Vernal Navelwort, Polyanthus Narcissus, Pansies or Hearts-ease, Periwinkles, Yellow Alpine Alyssum, Eastern Alyssum with purple flowers, Violets, Blue Mountain Saxifrage, Soldanella Alpina, &c. with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

LAURUSTINUS, two or three sorts; Mezerion Red and White, Spurge-laurel, Spanish Travellers-joy, Cherry Plum, White flowered Almond, Cornelian Cherry, Hamamelis, Manna Ash, Filberts, Hazle-nuts, Glastonbury Thorn, Blue-berried Upright Honeyfuckle,
Box

62 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Feb.

Box tree, Alaternus, Phillyrea, and some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

SILVER Fir; Black, White, and Golden Maiden-hair; Chickweed, Arbor Vitæ, Asarabacca, Ground Ivy, Spurge-laurel, Cypress Cones, Ash-coloured Ground Liverwort, Tree Moss, Cup Moss, Rue-leaved Whitlow-grass, Pine tree Cones. And, if the season proves late, most of the roots which are mentioned in the former month, may yet be taken up for use. If the season is forward, you have Violet flowers, Colts-foot flowers, Water-creffes: and the Birch tree will be fit to tap for the juice.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

You may now transplant most sorts of hardy forest trees, and flowering shrubs, provided the season be favourable; otherwise it will be better to defer it a little later. If you did not take off the layers of Elms, Limes, and other hardy forest trees or shrubs, in the autumn, it should

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 63

should now be done, planting them into the nursery in rows three feet asunder, and eighteen inches distance in the rows; where they may stand five or six years to obtain strength, in order for transplanting where they are to remain.

THE ground where you intend to plant a nursery of evergreens, should now be carefully trenched, observing to cleanse it from the roots of all noxious weeds, particularly Couch-grass, which, if left in the ground, will mix with the roots of the new-planted trees, and prove very injurious to them, and will be very difficult to get out again.

WHERE the ground between the trees in the nursery was not dug the former month, it should now be done, observing (as was before directed) not to injure the roots; but shorten such as were extended far from their stems, in order to force out young roots nearer, that they may be fited for transplanting; this should be particularly observed in Hollies, and other evergreens, which should be constantly dug round every year, cutting off all downright roots, and such as extend themselves far from the plants, which will occasion a great quantity of strong fibres to be sent forth near their stems, and render them much safer to remove,

remove, because these will maintain a ball of earth to their roots, when they are carefully taken up; the want of which renders it almost impracticable to transplant such trees as have remained many years, without having been dug round.

YOU must now plant Chestnuts, and sow the seeds, mast, or berries, of other hardy trees and shrubs, being careful to cover them with earth; for if any of them are left exposed, it will intice mice, and other vermin, whereby your seeds will be eaten up, and your whole seminary destroyed.

TOWARD the latter end of this month, you should cut off the heads of your stocks, which were buded with fruit the preceeding summer, about four or five inches above the buds, always observing to cut the stock sloping from the bud, that it may not be injured by the flowing of the sap from the wounded part of the stock.

IF this month proves mild, you must graft Cherries, Plums, Pears, Apples, and other hardy fruits; but if there are hard frosts, and drying winds, it will be better to defer it a little later: for such weather is very destructive to grafts.

YOU

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 63

You may now plant cutings of Currants, Gooseberries, and other trees which will grow from cutings, in shady borders, observing to close the earth well about them; otherwise the drying winds of March will penetrate the ground and destroy them; but the autumn is the best season for this work; though they will sometimes succeed at this season.

MAKE layers of all your hardy exotick trees, which you want to increase in this month, after all hard frosts are over; for some of these are too tender to be laid in autumn, the wet of the winter, succeeded by frost, being very destructive to most of these tender plants, when laid.

You may now increase some of the exotick trees and shrubs, which do not easily propagate by layers and cutings, by cutting off some of their young strong roots, dividing them into lengths of about four or five inches, planting them into pots filled with light loamy earth, plunging the pots into a moderate hot-bed, covering them close with glasses, which will cause them to put out roots below, and shoots above, so that in one year they will make good plants; by this method many plants have been increased, which are very difficult to propagate in the usual ways.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

IF the weather be mild, and the air soft, you should begin to let air into your green-house; but this must be done with care at first; and never open the glasses when the wind is sharp, or if it blows against the front of the green-house; for a sharp air, at this season, will do great damage to your plants, now they are made tender by standing in the green-house. Myrtles, Oranges, Geraniums, and other hardy plants, must now be frequently refreshed with water; but let them have it moderately and often; for if it be given to them in large quantities at this season, it will be very injurious to them.

PICK off all dead and decayed leaves from your plants, and stir the surface of the earth in the pots or tubs, clearing them from weeds; and if you add a little very rotten neats dung upon the tops of the tubs or pots, it will be serviceable to the plants. You should at the same time brush down all cobwebs, and make the house clean in every part, neatness being

ing as necessary to the health of plants as of animals.

MAKE hot-beds to sow tender exotick seeds upon, which are brought from very hot countries, observing to work the dung well, that the beds may retain their heat, and settle equally; for when the dung is not equally stirred, and beat down with a fork, it will settle in holes, which is a great fault in these beds, because when they are watered, the water will run into the holes and cause those places to be over wet, when the other parts of the bed will receive little or no benefit from it; but if they are seeds of trees and shrubs, the better method is to sow them in pots of earth, and plunge them into a hot-bed of tanners bark, because as these seeds often remain a long time before they vegetate, so if the heat of the bed should decline too much, it may be increased again by stirring it up, and adding some new tan to it.

IF any of the Orange trees have suffered by ill management, so much that their heads are decayed, you should now prune them close, and shift them into fresh earth; and then prepare a moderate hot-bed in a glass case, into which they must be placed to force them out early in the spring, that their shoots

may have time to harden before winter. But in shifting them, you should be careful to cut off all mouldy and decayed roots, and to cleanse both roots and stems from any filth they may have contracted; and twist some hay-bands round the stems, from the surface of the ground up to their heads, which will prevent the sun from drying of their bark; and when they are placed in the hot-bed, you must be careful that the heat be not too great, as also to frequently refresh them with water, not only to their roots, but over every part of their stems, which will supple their barks, and cause them to push out vigorously. But when the sun begins to shine with great force, the glasses of the house should be shaded with mats or cloths, during the heat of the day, otherwise it will scorch their leaves and dry the bark of the shoots; so that they will greatly suffer, if too much exposed thereto; but this heading and forcing of Orange trees should not be too often practised on them; for it will weaken the trees, when repeated too frequently; therefore where they are not in a very bad condition, it will be the better way to shift them, if there be occasion; and their stems must be well rubbed with a strong hair-brush, with scowering-sand and water; and cut off all decayed branches,

and

and place them in a shady situation, when they are brought out of the green-house, where, if they are duly supplied with water, they will break out again very strong and well. The Orange stems which are annually imported from *Italy*, must also be treated in this way, to force out new shoots from them; but the roots of these should be soaked in water two days before they are planted, and all the decayed and bruised roots should be intirely cut off; their stems carefully washed, and cleansed from filth, and the bed into which they are plunged, must be of a moderate temperature for heat.

THE tan in the beds of the stoves will now require to be stirred up, and some fresh bark added to them to renew their heat, which will now begin to decline; and, if not timely renewed, the plants will suffer greatly: but this must be done in a warm day, when the air is soft; for in very cold weather the glassess must not be opened, so that the bark could not be then put in without injuring the plants. At the same time, such of the plants as are rooted through the pots, should be shifted into pots a size larger; but in doing of this, great care must be had, not to injure their roots, be-

cause at this season, they will not soon recover it.

WASH and clean the leaves of your Coffee trees, and other woody plants in the bark-stove, from insects and filth; and pick off all decayed leaves, which if left on, would infect the air of the house. The surface of the earth in the pots should also be frequently stirred, to prevent its binding, and they must always be kept free from weeds.

THE Anana plants will now shew their fruit apace, so that they should be frequently watered, giving them but little each time, to bring them forward and keep the fruit swelling; and the heat of the tan must be kept up; for if that is suffered to decline, the plants will change their colour, and the fruit will be rendered small, and worth little. Toward the end of this month you must prepare some fresh bark to make the summer beds for the Ananas, into which they should be plunged some time the next month. But this is to be only understood of those plants which are for a succession, and the suckers of the last season; nor should these be removed too early into the beds, unless there is a fire-place to warm the air in bad weather; for the warmth of the bark alone will not be sufficient for these plants,

plants, before the beginning of April; the tan beds in which the fruiting plants are placed, must be refreshed with some new tan the latter end of this month, especially those beds whose heat declines: for if the tan is not kept to a proper degree of warmth at this season, the growth of the fruit will be greatly retarded.

THE Aloes, Euphorbiums, Torch-thistles, Melon-thistles, and other tender succulent plants, should have very little water given them at this season; but the Ficoidefes, Sedums, Cotyledons, and other hardy kinds, must be frequently refreshed: but these must not have it in too large quantities, because much wet at this season will often rot them. You must now make fresh hot-beds of tan, to sow the seeds of such tender exoticks as are annual, or that you may have received from abroad; into which you should plunge small pots, filled with light fresh earth, that the mould may be warm before the seeds are sown. This method of sowing the seeds in pots is preferable to any other, because the plants may be shaken out of the pots, when they are fit to transplant, with the earth about their roots, whereby they will be in little danger of suffering, because their roots will be

preserved entire. And such of the seeds as remain long in the ground, may be removed into a fresh hot-bed, when the heat of the first declines, which will forward their vegetation.

TOWARD the end of this month, there should be some hot dung prepared, to make a bed for to transplant some of the tender sorts of annual flowers, in order to bring them forward, that they may flower and perfect their seed before winter.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE and
STOVE.*

INDIAN yellow Jasmine, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Spanish Jasmine, Heath-leaved Phyllis, Clusia with sessile leaves, Geranium with a scarlet flower, Geranium with a variegated flower, several sorts of Ficoideæ, Polygala arborescens, Aleppo Cyclamens, African Shrubby Senecio's with succulent leaves and Buckhorn leaves, Hermannia Alni folio, Aloes of several sorts, Arctotyses, Turnera, Shrubby American Bastard Sena with a large yellow flower, Euphorbiums, Cotyledon with broad cut leaves, Malpighia mali puniceæ facie, Purple-flowered Ragwort, Cistuses, Coffee tree,

Feb. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 73

tree, Arum Æthiopicum, Myrto-cistus, Jacobæa Lily, Mexican Lily, Ixias, Watsonia African Wood Sorrel with large purple flowers, African Wood Sorel with large yellow flowers, Shrubby Purple Startwort from the Cape of Good Hope, Spreading Startwort with purple flowers from Africa, Sisyrrinchium, Crinum, Pancratiums, Corona Regalis, Indian Gladiolus, Indian Birthwort with a scarlet flower, African Tansey, Coral tree, Antholiza, with some others.



MARCH.



M A R C H.

Work to be done in the **KITCHEN-
GARDEN.**

THE weather in this month is generally more unsettled than in any other month of the year ; sometimes it proves dry and frosty ; at other times cold and wet, with storms of hail, and strong winds ; which makes a diligent attendance upon the hot-beds of Cucumbers and Melons, absolutely necessary ; otherwise they often miscarry, or, at least, lose all their first crop of fruit : to avoid which, if your beds have very much declined their heat, you should add a lining of new horse dung round the sides, which will renew the heat of the beds ; and also observe to cover the glasses close with mats every night ; but in the day time they must have fresh air, in proportion to the heat of the beds, whenever the weather will permit, especially

cially after the new dung is laid on their sides, which will occasion a great steam in the beds for some days; which, if pent in the frames, will be very injurious to the plants, and frequently cause the fruit to drop off, and come to nothing.

Sow the seeds of Cabbages, Savoy, and Red Cabbages, for next winter's use; and plant out all your Cauliflower plants which are remaining in the winter beds, in the quarters of the kitchen-garden, for the general crop; and those Cauliflower plants which were raised the last month, to succeed those raised in autumn, should now be pricked out upon fresh hot-beds, to bring them forward; but they should not be too closely covered, because it will draw them up weak, and spoil them; therefore at all times when the weather is mild, the covers should be taken off, to let them enjoy the open air, and only covered in the night or bad weather.

CONTINUE to put in Beans and Peas every fortnight, that there may be a succession of them through the season; and sow Radishes, Spinach, and young sallit herbs, every week, to succeed those before sown; and sow some Celery seed toward the end of this month, to succeed that which was sown in February.

You

76 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

You may now sow Parsneps, Carrots, Onions, Leeks, Beets, Borage, Bugloss, Burnet, Dill, Fennel, Chervil, Smallage, Alifanders, &c. but these should be sown early in the month, especially if the soil is dry, otherwise they seldom grow large; but, upon a moist soil, the middle or latter end of the month is time enough. But as the seeds of Dill, Fennel, Smallage, and Alifanders, do often miscarry when they are sown at this season, so in dry land they will succeed much better when they are sown in autumn.

THE beginning of this month you should earth up Alexanders to blanch them, which will render them very tender, so that in three weeks time they will be fit for use; for when they begin to shoot their stems for flowering, they are good for nothing. This is also the time for blanching Dandelion, which some people are very fond to eat as a sallet herb: the plants may be procured from the fields, and planted deep into the ground, in the same manner as is practised for Endive, which will blanch it in three weeks fit for use.

You may yet sow Parsley, Sorrel, Chervil, Orach, Fennel, Marigolds, and Spinach, especially if the ground is moist; for in such land this season is better than to sow them earlier.

SLIP

SLIP and plant Mint, Tansey, Tarragon, Pennyroyal, Chamomile, Baum, Savory, Sage, Rosemary, Hyssop, Lavender Cotten, Spike-lavender, Wormwood, Southernwood, Thyme, and most other aromatick plants, which are now begining to shoot, and will take root better than at any other time of the year.

YOU may now slip the off-sets from the old roots of Skirrets, and plant them in rows ten inches asunder, and six inches distance in the rows, observing, in dry weather, to water them until they have taken root; but these seldom make so good roots as those raised from seed.

YOUR large kinds of Lettuce plants which have stood the winter in warm borders, must now be planted out into a more open exposure; otherwise they will draw up weak, and come to little, especially if they are near to walls, pales, or hedges, or where they are planted but a small distance from each other: in which cases a good part of the plants may be transplanted, and a few left remaining at a proper distance to furnish the table early in the season. You must also sow some seeds of the Cilisia, Cos, Imperial, and other Lettuces, in an open rich spot of ground, to succeed those of the last month's sowing.

ABOUT

ABOUT the middle of this month you must fork the Asparagus beds, being very careful not to hurt the crown of the roots; but you may defer raking them smooth till the beginning of next month, whereby you will retard the growth of weeds: and that will be early enough, provided it be done before the buds appear above-ground; for the only danger, attending this late dressing, is the destroying of the buds.

ABOUT the beginning of this month is a good season for sowing of the large-rooted Dutch Parsley; which may be sown either in open beds or in drills about a foot asunder; and, when the plants are come up, they should be thinned so as to leave them three or four inches apart in the rows, in order to obtain good roots: or they may be sown thin on a spot of light earth, in the same manner as Carrots, and hoed out; and managed as is usually practised for them, which is a right way to produce large roots.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you may plant new Asparagus beds, if the ground be dry; but if it be wet, it will be better to defer it till the beginning of next month; for these plants always take best, when they are transplanted just as they begin to shoot. But in
this

Mar. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 79

this you must be determined by the season, either early or late as it may happen.

YOUR Radishes and Spinach, which were sown in January, and the beginning of February, should now be hoed, leaving them four or five inches asunder; and observe to stir all the ground between them, which will destroy all the young weeds, and greatly promote the growth of the plants; but this work should be done in dry weather.

CONTINUE to make hot-beds for Cucumbers, Melons, Purslane, &c. to succeed those which were made the former month; and the end of the month sow Cucumber and Melon seeds, to ridge out under Bell or hand glasses, for the principal crop. And now the seeds of Capsicum for pickling should be sown, as also the Tomatoes for soups upon a hot-bed; and toward the end of the month, a few seeds of Indian Cress should be sown upon a very moderate hot-bed, to bring a few plants forward, where their flowers are wanted earlier than those usually come which are sown in the open air.

DRESS your Artichokes, observing to leave only two or three of the clearest and best situated plants upon each root to bear, and slip the rest clean off; the best of which may

be now planted to make a new plantation ; and these will produce heads in autumn, after those upon the old roots are gone.

Sow Cardoons upon a bed of rich light earth, pretty thin, observing to keep them clear from weeds ; and, in dry weather, they must be watered until they are big enough to transplant.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you may put in some Kidney-beans in warm borders, where they may be defended from cold ; but this must not be done in wet weather, because too much moisture, at this season, will rot them.

YOU should also sow Sweet-marjoram, Thyme, Hyssop, and other tender aromatick plants, upon a dry warm soil ; for they will not do well on a wet ground.

CONTINUE to sow all sorts of young salliet herbs, twice a week, as Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, &c. upon warm borders, until the latter end of the month, when they will do better in a more open exposure.

PART the roots of Chives, and plant them in a shady situation to increase them, and Eschallions may also be parted at this season. Plant Rocambole and Shallots, and the beginning of the month transplant Leeks for seed ;
these

Mar. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 81

these should be planted near a hedge to a good exposure, because the seeds do not ripen till the autumn, which in a bad season seldom is good, when they are in an open and cold situation.

AT the end of this month you may sow Purslane upon warm borders, in the common ground; where it will, at that time, do well without any artificial heat, provided the season proves warm and dry. You may also at this time sow Turneps upon an open spot of ground, to come early.

You must now sow the seeds of Finnochia in drills made about a foot asunder, into which the seeds should be thinly scattered, and covered over about half an inch thick with light earth. This should have a rich light soil, otherwise it will not succeed well.

TOWARD the end of this month you may sow Hemp, Flax; White, Dutch, and Red Clover, Saint Foyn, and Lucern, provided the season proves favourable, otherwise it is better to defer it a little longer. This is the season for sowing of Barley and March Rye. In dry weather you may now rowl Wheat.

Sow all the sorts of Rouncival and Grey Peas, for the full crop, in the open fields; and those Peas which were sown in the former months, and are come up, should be gently
G earthed,

82 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

earthed, and the ground hoed between them, in dry weather.

THIS month is the proper season for sowing of Carrots in the open fields; the roots of which are designed for feeding of sheep, which is now much practised by some of the most knowing farmers; for one acre of Carrots will fatten more sheep, than three acres of Turneps; and as the Carrots are sown in the spring, so they are not liable to the accident of being destroyed by the fly, as is the case of Turneps, which renders them a more certain crop.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

WINTER Spinach in great plenty, some Cabbages and Savoys are yet remaining; Sprouts from the stalks of Cabbages and Savoys in great plenty, and very good; Broccoli, Coleworts, Borecole, Red Beets, Chard Beets, Cardoons, Carrots, Parsneps, Turneps, Potatoes, Jerusalem Artichokes, Celery, Endive, and all sorts of young sallit herbs; and, upon the hot-beds, Cucumbers, Asparagus, Peas, Kidney-beans, Purslane, &c. You have also, on warm borders, Mint, Tarragon, Tansy, and Clary, with Sage, Parsley Marigolds, Burnet, Sorrel,

Mar. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 83

Sorrel, Hyffop, Winter Savory, Rosemary, Baum, and other kinds of pot herbs

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

Yo u must now finish pruning all your tender sorts of fruit trees, as Peaches, Apricocks, Nectarines, &c. for their buds, by this time, (if the spring has been mild) will be very turgid, and in danger of being rubbed off, in nailing the branches. When you have finished the pruning and nailing of the trees, the ground should be dug about their roots to loosen it, and destroy the weeds. And when the trees are in blossom, if the weather should prove very sharp, and the nights frosty, it will be proper to cover them with mats, canvas, or reeds, to guard them from injury; but these coverings should be taken off at all times when the weather is mild, otherwise they will force out the shoots too soon and render the blossoms so weak, that the least inclement weather will destroy them; it will also be proper, in very dry seasons, to sprinkle some water gently over the branches of your fruit trees, especially in mild weather; which will strengthen the bloom, and forward the fruit, and also be

84 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

of great service to the trees, but this must be performed with great caution.

Y o u may yet transplant fruit trees upon a moist soil ; but if your ground be not ready by the middle of the month to receive them, it will be proper to take them up, and prune their roots, and then lay them in the ground, covering their roots and stems with litter, to prevent their being dried by the sun and wind : this will retard their shooting, and their roots will be prepared for pushing, by which method there will be little danger of their succeeding ; provided they are duly watered in dry weather, and the surface of the ground about their roots covered with mulch, to prevent the sun and air from penetrating to the roots of the trees.

T H I S is the principal month for grafting most sorts of fruit trees, begining with the early kinds, that is, such as come first out in blossom, and ending with Apples, which are some of the latest in coming out ; but this must be performed earlier or later, according to the season.

C U T off the heads of those stocks which were inoculated the last summer, leaving about four inches above the bud to attract the sap, and, if need be, to fasten the shoot to, to prevent

vent its being blown out ; and after this is done, the ground between the trees should be dug to bury the weeds, and loosen it, for the roots of the plants to find nourishment.

DRESS and fresh earth your beds of Strawberries, pulling off their strings, and clearing them from weeds, which will cause them to produce a great quantity of fruit ; and dig between the rows of Raspberries (where it was not before done) to make the ground clean, and loosen it, that the roots of the plants may penetrate the better into it.

YOUR fruit trees which were planted the last autumn, with their heads intire, should now be headed down to three or four eyes ; in doing of which, you must be very careful not to disturb their roots : to prevent which, you should place your foot close to the stem, and hold the lower part of the tree fast with your left hand, while, with a sharp knife in your right hand, you cut off the head. You should also cover the ground carefully with mulch, or rather with some green sward, turning the grass downward, which will prevent the sun and wind from penetrating the ground to their roots, the neglect of which has destroyed many new-planted trees.

86 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

THOSE trees which were grafted the former spring, and are yet remaining in the nursery, should be shortened to four or five eyes, that they may be furnished with lateral branches near the ground; otherwise they will run up tall, and become naked at bottom; but this is chiefly to be understood of dwarf trees.

DIG and clear the ground between your Gooseberries and Currants, which will strengthen their blossoms, and encourage the trees, and add a neatness to the place.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; Bergamot Bugi, Saint Martial, Winter Boncretien, Double Fleur, Royal d'Hyver, Bezy de Chaumontelle, L'Amozelle; and, for baking, the Cadillac, Parkinson's Warden, Union or Pickering, with some others.

APPLES; Loan's Permain, Nonpareil, Golden Ruffet, Pile's Ruffet, Wheeler's Ruffet, Kentish Pippin, Holland Pippin, French Pippin, Pomme d'Api, Stone Pippin, John Apple, with some others.

Work

Work to be done in the FLOWER-GARDEN.

IN this month you may transplant most sorts of fibrous-rooted plants, as Carnations, Pinks, Sweet Williams, Rose Campions, Lych-nises, Thrift, Asters, Golden-rods, Perennial Sun-flowers, Canterbury Bells, Peach-leaved Bell-flower, French Honeyfuckles, Daifies, Bupthalmums, Leucanthemums, Colum-bines, Hieraciums, Hepaticas, Fraxinellas, Ragged Robin, Wholesome Wolffbane, with many other sorts; though if the soil be dry, it would have been better if done in the autumn, because they would have taken root in the ground, and so be better enabled to resist the drought, and also to produce a greater quantity of flowers.

STIR the earth of your borders, and beds of flowers, which were planted at Michaelmas, with a narrow trowel; and be very careful in doing of this, not to injure the roots, nor the flower buds, which now begin to appear; this will prevent the growth of weeds, and, when raked over smooth, will render the beds more agreeable to the eye.

YOUR choice Hyacinths, Anemonies, Ranunculuses, and Tulips, will now begin to

shew their flower buds, when they should be carefully covered with mats or canvas in bad weather; for, at this season, the nights are often frosty, and if the flowers are exposed, their buds are frequently pinched, so that they will not open so fair as those which are protected. At this time, there should be small sticks put down by the roots of the fine Hyacinths, to which their stems should be fastened to support them; otherwise their flowers, being very heavy, will bear down the stalks, and spoil their beauty.

PLANT some roots of common double Anemones to flower late, after those which were planted in autumn are past; and if the season should prove dry, refresh them now and then with water, otherwise they will not succeed well.

THE boxes and pots with seedling Auriculas should now be placed in a shady situation; for the plants will begin to appear, and if they are exposed to the full sun but one day, while they are young, it will destroy most of them: you must also refresh them with water in dry weather, but give it to them very gently, lest you wash them out of the ground.

YOUR pots of choice Auriculas must now be taken care of, to protect them from blighting

ing winds and frosty nights, which will otherwise pinch their flower buds, and spoil their blowing: you must also refresh them now and then with water in dry weather, but do not let the wet get into the center of the plants, lest it injure the flower stems.

DIG up the ground in your wilderness quarters, and between flowering shrubs, if it hath not been done the former month: this will loosen the ground, and encourage the shrubs to flower strongly, and render the place free from weeds; for neatness is always to be desired in every part of a garden: but in doing of this, there should be great care taken not to cut or injure the roots of such flowers as are planted between them.

GIVE fresh earth to the Carnations which were planted out for good at Michaelmas, which must be done by taking part of the earth out of the pots, being careful not to disturb their roots, and then fill up the pots with fresh earth, and pick off decayed leaves; this will greatly strengthen them from flowering.

YOUR pots of double Rose Campions, Campanulas, Scarlet Lychnises, &c. which were planted at Michaelmas, should also be picked from all dead leaves and filth, and the earth on the top of the pots taken out, and the
pots

pots refilled with fresh rich earth, which will strengthen them greatly for flowering.

CLEAN the flower beds and borders of weeds, and gently stir the surface of the ground, to clear off Moss, &c. This will add a neatness, and be of great service to the flowers.

TOWARD the latter end of this month, you may sow the seeds of all hardy annual flowers in the borders of the pleasure-garden; such as Flos Adonis, Venus Looking-glass, Venus Navelwort, Sweet-scented Peas, Tangier Peas, Lobel's Catchfly, Large Double Poppy, Dwarf Lychnis, Dwarf Annual Stock, Candy Tuft, Oriental Mallow, Lavateras, Ketmia Vesicaria, Convolvulus Minor, Convolvulus Major, Sweet Sultans, Annual Sunflower, Nasturtium Indicum, Dwarf Poppy, with many others. The best method is to sow the seeds thin in little patches, where they are to remain; and where the plants come up too thick, they should be thined, leaving but few in each patch according to their growth, for these sorts do not succeed so well when they are transplanted.

You may now sow the seeds of many kinds of biennial and perennial plants in your flower-nursery, to supply the borders of the flower-garden the following year; as Columbines,
Canter-

Mar. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 91

Canterbury Bells, French Honeysuckles, Stockgilliflowers, Wall-flowers, Sweet Williams, Pinks, Tree Primrose, Greek Valerian, Pyramidal Campanula, Single Scarlet Lychnis, Single Rose Campion, Single Catchfly, Veronicas, with some others. Upon a moderate hot-bed you may now sow the seeds of Marvel of Peru, French Marigold, Female Balfamine, African Marigold, Convolvulus Major, Capsicums, Stramoniums, Indian Pink, Sweet Sultan, Pomum Amoris, or Love Apple, Tree Amaranthus, Purple Amaranthus, or Loves-a-bleeding, and many other sorts, which are indifferent hardy, but require a little warmth to bring them forward in the spring; yet if sown too early, are apt to grow too large before the season will be favourable enough to transplant them abroad.

MAKE fresh hot-beds for your choice sorts of annual plants, which were sown the former month, and let the earth upon these beds be very good, for otherwise your plants will not thrive well. When the heat of the beds is moderate, the plants should be placed into them, allowing them proper distances to grow; and observe to refresh them with water, as they shall require; by which method
your

92 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

your Amaranthuses, and other sorts of curious annuals, may be brought to a large size.

TOWARD the end of the month if the season be mild, and inclinable to wet, you may transplant most sorts of Evergreens, as Hollies, Yews, Phillyreas, Alaternuses, Bays, Magnolias, Cypress, Cedars of Libanus, Evergreen Cassine, Cistuses of all the sorts, Moon-trefoil, &c. with many kinds of exotick trees, observing to cover the surface of the ground with mulch after they are planted, to prevent the sun and wind from penetrating the ground, and drying their roots; but if this month be cold, and north or east winds reign, with dry weather, it will be better to wait till next month, when the season may be more favourable.

IN this month the seeds of the Arbutus or Strawberry tree may be sown on a moderate hot-bed, which will greatly forward its growth, provided the bed is duly watered.

YOU may now sow the seeds of Firs, Pines, Bays, Cedars, Alaternuses, Phillyreas, and other evergreen or hardy exotick trees, in such places where they may be exposed only to the morning sun; observing, if the place is wet, to raise the borders so much above the level of the ground, as not to have any water remain

remain upon the surface, as also to cover the seeds with light earth; but if the seeds of most of these sorts of trees are sown upon a very moderate hot-bed, it will be a more sure method of raising the plants, and it will greatly forward their growth. But there must be great care taken when the plants appear, to admit the free air to them at all times in favourable weather, otherwise they will draw up weak and come to little.

*Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE-
GARDEN.*

CROCUSES of various sorts, Double Snow-drop, Large early Snowdrop, several sorts of Narcissuses, Persian Iris, Double Pilewort, Daffodils of several sorts, Spring Cyclamen, Early Tulips, Crown Imperials, Hyacinths of several sorts, Fennel-leaved Perennial Adonis, some Anemonies, Violets, Hepaticas, Wall-flowers, Alysson, Perennial Fumitory, Primroses, Polyanthus, Daies, Dens Canis, Muscari, Hollow-root, Hermodactyl, Spring Colchicum, Auriculas, Hearts-ease or Pansies, Rose-root, Wood Anemonies, Hellebores, Perennial Navelwort, Blue Mountain Saxifrage, Spanish White Sedum, Venetian

94 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.
tian Vetch, Yellow Star Flower, with some
others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

ALMOND trees, Cherry Plum, Meze-
reens, Spurge-laurel, Laurustinus, Spanish
Travellers-joy, Cornelian Cherry, Benjamin
tree, Willow-leaved Sea Buckthorn, Upright
Honeysuckle, Scarlet flowering Maple, Nor-
way Maple, Laurel or Cherry Bay, Larch
tree, Manna Ash, Siberian Cytisus, with
some others.

*Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered
for Use.*

BROOK LIME, Elder buds, Nettle tops,
Colts-foot flowers, Noble Liverwort, Prim-
rose, Violet, Rue-leaved Whitlow-grass, Water-
cress, and, toward the end of the month,
the Poplar buds.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

IN this month you should sow the seeds
of Evergreens, such as Firs, Pines, Ever-
green

Mar. *The Gardener's Kalendar.* 95

green Oaks, Cedar of Libanus, Cypress, Juniper, Bays, and some other sorts; as also of several other hardy exotick trees, as the Acacias from Virginia, Persimon, Liquid Amber, Virginia Walnuts, Hickery Nuts, Occidental and Oriental Plane trees, Sassafras, Virginia Dogwood, Larch tree, Arbor Judæ, American Cypress, Black Haw, all the sorts of Medlar, Lazaroles. Chinquapin, Tulip tree, Bastard Acacia, Pistachia nuts, and some other sorts: the method of sowing each sort is fully inserted in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY.

You may now transplant most sorts of evergreen and exotick trees, provided the season proves favourable; otherwise you had better defer it until the beginning of the next month, always observing to do it when the wind is southerly, and when there is a prospect of some rain in a short time; for if it should prove dry weather, and the wind easterly, it would not be safe to transplant them. This work should be deferred till toward the end of the month, for fear the sharp easterly winds with frosty nights should return after this is performed, which would endanger the plants.

THIS

THIS is the season for planting cutings of several sorts of exotick trees and shrubs, which generally succeed best, when they are planted just before they begin to shoot; but if the season should prove dry, they must be frequently watered, and the surface of the ground covered with mulch, to prevent the sun and air from penetrating deep into the ground, which is apt to destroy such things as are not well rooted.

GRAFT all sorts of fruit trees in this month; and toward the latter end you may graft Hollies, and inarch any of the hardy exotick trees and shrubs; in the doing of which, you should be careful to clay them well; for if the air or wet gets into the cleft part of the branches, it will prevent the grafts from uniting with the stocks.

CONTINUE to dig between your young trees, where it was not done in the former months, that your ground may be stirred, and made clean, before the trees begin to shoot, which will not only render your nursery neat, but be of great service to the growth of the trees.

THE end of this month you should plant cutings of Vines, observing to lay them in the ground to the uppermost eye, so that no part of the cutting may appear above ground.

If

If this be duly observed, and such cuttings only chosen which have a knot of the old wood at their bottom, there will be no danger of their rooting.

STAKE and tie up such plants as you are desirous to have with strait stems; for if you neglect this when the plants are young, it cannot be performed after their stems are grown large and woody.

AT this season many of your trees and shrubs, whose seeds were sown in autumn, will begin to appear, therefore you should carefully weed them; and if the season should prove very dry, you should give them a little water once a week, and guard them against birds, mice, moles, hares, rabbits, and other vermin, which, in a short time, may destroy your whole stock of seedlings. And if the nights should prove frosty, all the beds of young seedling plants should be carefully covered, otherwise the frost will nip off the plants which are just peeping out of the ground; or by loosening the earth, they will be turned out of the ground: at this time the Common and Sweedish Juniper, Holly, Yew, Virginia and Carolina Cedars, American Dogwood, Sassafras, and other hard seeded plants, which were sown the last year, will

H

begin

98 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Mar.

begin to appear; therefore they should be diligently looked after, to prevent their being injured by frosts, or sharp easterly winds. Such of these as were sown in pots, may be now placed on a moderate hot-bed, which will forward their coming up, and by being pushed a little in the spring, the plants will get strong by the autumn, so will be better able to stand through the following winter.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

WATER your Orange trees, Myrtles, Bays, Amomum Plinii, and other less tender exotick trees, frequently, but do not give it to them too plentifully; and begin to inure them to the air by degrees, opening the glasses whenever the air is soft and mild; but in cold days, or when the air is sharp, it should not be admitted to them; for by being made tender in the house, a little sharp air will be prejudicial to them; until they are become somewhat hardier.

WASH and cleanse the leaves and stems of your Orange trees from the filth which they have contracted, during their confinement in
the

the house ; and those which do not require to be shifted, you must take the earth out from the tops of the tubs or pots, filling them again up with fresh rich earth, which will strengthen them greatly, and prepare them for flowering.

TOWARD the end of this month (if the weather be favourable) you may take out your tubs of Bays, Laurustinuses, Tree Wormwood, Cistus, and other hardy kinds, placing them near an hedge, in a situation where they may be well defended from cold winds ; and this will thin the house of plants, and give room to those that remain, to have a greater share of free air ; but this must be understood if the season is very mild, otherwise it must be deferred till next month.

IF any of your Orange trees have decayed heads, they should now be shifted, and their heads pruned close, and placed upon an hot-bed of tanners bark, to force them out again ; treating them in the manner directed in the former month.

YOU may also head down such Myrtles, Bays, and the broad-leaved Laurustinuses, as have ragged or decayed heads, observing to give them a very moderate warmth, just to make them push again, and then let them

have as much free air as possible. By this method you may renew their heads, which, with skilful pruning, may be reduced into good order, and the trees rendered beautiful.

Sow the kernels of Oranges, Lemons, and Citrons, for stocks to bud the several kinds of those fruits upon; if these are taken from rotten fruits, they are better than those from sound ones, provided the kernels are not decayed; these should be sown in pots, and plunged into moderate hot-beds of tanners bark, refreshing them often with water, which will bring them on prodigiously; but, in very hot weather, the glasses should be covered with mats, during the heat of the day.

THE seeds of Amomum Plinii, or Winter Cherry, may now be sown in pots, and plunged into a moderate hot-bed; and when the plants are come up three or four inches high, they may be transplanted into separate pots, and put into another hot-bed: these plants may be brought so forward, as to have plenty of fruit by the next winter, if they are sown the beginning of this month.

MAKE some hot-beds of tanners bark, in order to transplant such tender exotick plants as are come up from the seeds sown the former month; and, when the beds are in due order,
you

you should fill some small pots with fresh rich earth, and plunge them into the beds, that the earth may become warm before the plants are placed therein; which should be done the day after the pots are plunged, otherwise the earth will become too dry: when the plants are planted, they must be gently watered, and the glasses shaded until they have taken root; after which they should be frequently refreshed with water, and the air must be let into the beds proportionably to the warmth of the season.

THE fires in the stoves should now be abated; but this must be done by degrees, according as the weather increases in warmth.

YOUR Ananas or Pine apples, which have been in a dry stove during the winter season, must now be removed into bark-beds; therefore, if you have not prepared your beds ready to receive them, it should be no longer delayed, for the blossoms of the fruit will now begin to appear; and if the plants are checked at that time, their fruit is seldom so fair, nor so early ripe; and where the plants have been in tan all the winter, the beds will want refreshing with some new tan, if it was not done before.

STIR up the bark-beds in the stove, where it is wanted; and clean the leaves of your Coffee tree, and other woody plants, from the filth they may have contracted; and pick off all decayed leaves, which, if suffered to remain on, greatly injure the plants.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

FICOIDES of several sorts, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Spanish Jasmine, Hermania Alni folio, Anemonospermoses two or three kinds, Polygala African frutescens Buxi folio, Aleppo Cyclamens, Geraniums of several sorts, Hermannii Ibisci folio, Shrubby Senecio with succulent leaves, Aloes of several sorts, Coronilla Cretica argentea, Sedum arborescens, Lilio-Narcissus, Pancratium, Turnera, Cotyledon with a broad cut leaf, Cytisus hirsutus, Cytisus spinosus, Shrubby St. Peterwort of Minorca, African Grass leaved Marygold, Lycium with narrow leaves, Canary Campanula, African Fleabane with a Sage leaf, Cistuses, Sena Spuria, Medicago arborescens, Crinums, Coffeetree, Jacobæa with purple flowers, Tithymals of several sorts, Teucrium Bæticum Phyllica, Chrysocoma, Cytisus from the Canaries

Mar. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 103

naries, Ornithogalums from the Cape of Good Hope of two or three sorts, three sorts of Ixia, Cunonia, Watsonia, Antholyza, African Wood Sorrel with large purple flowers, and that sort with large yellow flowers, Tree Scabiose, Shrubby African Marigold, Othonna with cut leaves, African Shrubby Tanfies, Shrubby Candy Tuft, Shrubby African Starwort, Indian Canna, Celastrus, Malpighias, Small creeping Cereus, Purple Lotus, Euphorbiums, Tetragonia, with trailing branches, Blue African branching Starwort, Amaryllis of two or three sorts, with some others.





A P R I L.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

IN the begining of this month, you must prepare your dung to make ridges for Melons and Cucumbers, which are to be covered with bell or hand glasse; this work may be begun about the middle, and continued to the end of the month, where large quantities are required: but those made late in the month need not have so much dung in them as the early ones. You should, the middle of this month, plant out the Melons which are to be raised under paper. In making of these ridges, if the ground is dry, the dung should lie but half a foot higher than the surface of the ground; and the earth should be laid
at

at least a foot and an half thick upon the dung, that the Melon plants may have depth enough to root. Where this is practised, the plants will require no water after they are well rooted; and hereby a good crop of the choicer sorts of Melons may be always obtained; which, in the common method, do rarely come to good; but in those situations which are moist, the ridges should be raised above the level of the ground, to keep the dung out of the wet, which will damp and chill it, whereby the plants are often destroyed, where this care is not taken. But the alleys between these beds should be afterward raised with dung and earth to the level of the beds, that the roots may have room to extend on each side, for the roots of these plants do spread as far in the ground, as their branches do extend on the surface.

You may still sow sweet Marjoram, Thyme, summer Savory, and other aromatick plants; the first of which does not succeed if it is sown too early, especially if the spring is cold and wet.

PLANT Kidney Beans the beginning of the month in a warm situation, and in dry weather, for much wet will destroy the seeds in the ground; and you may sow Purslane upon
warm

warm borders, to come after that on the hot-bed is gone.

C O N T I N U E to hoe your crops of Radishes, Carrots, Parsneps, Onions, Leeks, &c. thinning them out to proper distances; and cut down all the weeds among them: this should always be done in dry weather, that the weeds may be destroyed. This stirring of the ground between your plants will be of great service to promote their growth, and the ground will be hereby preserved clear from weeds, till the crops are fit for use.

I N moist weather, plant slips or cuttings of Sage, Rosemary, Rue, Savory, Mastich, Thyme, Lavendar, Stœchas, Lavender Cotton, and other aromattick plants; for, at this season they take root very freely, especially if they are shaded from the sun, and duly watered.

P L A N T Garden Beans for a latter crop, and continue sowing the Marrow-fat and other large kinds of Peas, to succeed those which were sown the former month; and also some of the Hotspur Peas should now be sown, at three different times in this month, to have a succession of them for the best table.

You may yet slip Artichokes and plant upon a moist soil; but if the soil is dry, they will not succeed so well as those which were
planted

planted the last month. You should in the middle of this month plant out your Cauliflower plants, which were raised in February, for a latter crop. These should have a moist soil, for in dry land they seldom produce good heads.

CONTINUE to sow all sorts of young salad herbs, as Radish, Rape, Turnep, Mustard, &c. every week; for at this season they will soon be too large for use; but you should observe, as the heat of the season increases, to sow them in a more shady situation; for in summer they thrive best on a north border.

Sow some Cos, Silesia, and other kinds of large Lettuces, to succeed those which were sown the former month: but these should have a moist soil, otherwise (if the summer should prove dry) they will shoot up for seed and not cabbage.

TRANSPLANT your young Celery plants into beds of rich earth at about three inches distance each way, observing to water them duly until they have taken root; but in doing of this, you should not draw up all the plants clean out of the seed bed, but only thin them, taking out the large ones, and leave the smaller plants to get strength.

H O E the ground between your rows of Beans and Peas, and draw the earth up to their stems, which will strengthen them; and, by clearing the ground from weeds, the plants will thrive better.

A F T E R a shower of rain, draw the earth up to the stems of your Cabbage and Cauliflower plants, which were planted either in autumn, or early in the spring. This is absolutely necessary, to guard their stems from the sun and wind, which dry and harden them; but you must be careful in doing of this, not to draw the earth up into their hearts, which will destroy them.

B E careful to destroy snails and slugs, which, at this season, are invited abroad by gentle showers of rain, when they may be easily taken; for if they are suffered to remain, they will soon increase greatly, and become very troublesome and destructive to many of your crops.

I F the nights prove cold, you must be careful to cover the glasses over your early Cucumbers and Melons; for the young fruit is very subject to drop off where the beds are grown cool, or proper coverings are wanting.

S o w Turneps on a moist spot of ground, to succeed those which were sown the last month;

month; and those then sowed should now be hoed out to a proper distance, and the weeds between them destroyed.

YOUR beds of Mint, Tarragon, Parsley, &c. should now be carefully weeded; for if the weeds are permitted to get above the plants, at this season, they will draw them up weak, and spoil them: and if the season should prove dry, the beds should be watered, which will greatly promote the growth of the plants.

You may now plant cuttings or slips of Mint, Tarragon, &c. to make new beds, for the old plants are apt to decay, after they have stood two or three years.

TRANSPLANT some of your Silesia, Cos, and other large kinds of Lettuces, which were sown the former month, observing to water them till they have taken new root.

THE Cabbages and Savoys, which were sown the last month, should now be thined and pricked out into beds that they may acquire strength before they are transplanted out for good; and the seed-beds must be weeded, otherwise the plants will be drawn up tall and weak, by the weeds growing among them. You should now sow some Savoy and Cabbage seed for the latest crop, to succeed those which were sown the former month.

Sow

110 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

Sow Hemp and Flax, and pole Hops; at the same time you should clear your Hop grounds from weeds, and make up the hills: you may also sow some late Rouncival, and large Grey Peas, in the open fields, for winter provision, if the ground is cool and moist.

THE latter end of this month you should look over your Artichokes, and draw out all the young plants which have been produced since the stocks were split; for if these are permitted to grow, they will rob the plants, which were left for fruit, of their nourishment, and cause the fruit to be small. Some of the best of these plants may be trimmed and planted, where there are any wanted to repair a young plantation; but as these late plants rarely produce fruit the first year, so they are seldom planted, except there be great want of them.

Sow some more Celery seed about the middle of this month, to succeed that which was sown the former month; but this should be sown on a moist spot of ground, and in dry weather carefully watered and shaded from the sun, otherwise it will not come up.

You must also sow some Fench seed, to succeed that which was before sown; for when it is fit for use, it will not continue more than eighteen or twenty days before it will run to seed;

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* III

seed ; so that there is an absolute necessity of having a succession.

KEEP all your young crops clean from weeds ; for if, at this season, that work is neglected, it will require much more labour afterward, and the crops will be greatly injured by the weeds.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

SPROUTS of Broccoli, Cabbages, and Savoys, are now very good, if they are gathered before they run up to seed. The young shoots of Turneps and Hop tops, are often eaten when there is a scarcity of other greens, all sorts of young Sallet herbs, Spinach, Radishes, Asparagus, Coleworts, Parsley, Alifanders, Chard Beet, Celery, Endive, Sorrel, Burnet, Thyme, Hyssop, Winter Savory, Pot Marjoram, Marigolds ; Brown Dutch, and Cabbage Lettuces, in warm borders ; some Cos Lettuce, upon warm borders where they have escaped the frost ; toward the end of the month, Chervil, young Onions, Leeks, Chives, Eschallions, Rocambole, Borage, Sage, Rosemary, and some Parsneps and Carrots, where they have been preserved in sand ; for where they have remained in the ground, they will have sprouted,

112 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

ed, after which their roots will become sticky and tough. Young Carrots, which were sown in autumn are now in prime; and the young shoots of Salsafy, which is, by some persons, preferred to Asparagus. Upon the hot-beds, Cucumbers, Peas, Kidney Beans, and Purslane; and, toward the end of the month, you have often Peas on warm borders, and some early Cabbages.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

IN the begining of this month you may graft some late kinds of fruit, provided the season be backward; but if the spring is forward, it will be too late for this work.

LOOK carefully to your young fruit trees, observing to water them in dry weather; and, if you observe their leaves begining to curl up, you should water them gently all over their branches: this may also be practised to great advantage on old trees, when you find their leaves are curling; but you must not do it in the heat of the day, lest the sun should scorch their leaves; nor too late in the evening, especially if the nights are cold. Where you observe the fruit trees to be greatly infested with insects, you should steep a good quantity
of

of Tobacco stalks in water, with which the trees should be washed; which, if carefully done, will destroy the insects, and not do any injury to the trees; or if the leaves which are much curled are taken off, and some Tobacco dust thrown on the branches, it will destroy the insects, and may in a day or two after be washed off again.

THOSE fruit trees which were inoculated the last summer, and have succeeded, should have the stocks cut down to three or four inches above the bud the beginning of the month (if it was not done the former month); for now the buds will begin to shoot.

TOWARD the end of this month you must begin to look over your walls and espaliers of fruit trees, training in the regular kindly shoots, and displacing all foreright and luxuriant ones, where they are produced. You may also now thin your Apricocks, where they are too thick; for the sooner this is done, the better those will thrive which are left on.

PLANT cuttings of Vines in the places where they are to remain, observing always to have a knot of the old wood to the bottom of each, and bury them so deep in the ground, as that the uppermost eye may be even with

FRUITS in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; Franc-real, Bergamot Bugi, Saint Martial, Lord Cheyne's Winter Green, Bessy de Chaumontelle; from an espalier, Carmelite, and, for baking, the Cadillac, Parkinson's Warden, and the English Warden.

APPLES; Golden Ruffet, Pile's Ruffet, Wheeler's Ruffet, Nonpareil, John Apple, Stone Pippin, with some others.

IN the forcing-frame, Cherries, Masculine Apricock, some Plums; and on the hot-bed, Strawberries.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

THE begining of this month you may safely transplant many sorts of Evergreens, as Hollies, Yews, Pyracanthas, Alaternuses, Phillyrea, Cistuses, Evergreen Oaks, Firs, Pines, Cedars, Cypresses, Medicago frutescens, Hairy Citysus, &c. observing, if possible, to do it in a cloudy day, or when there are showers of rain; because the sun and wind are apt to dry the fibres of their roots, while they are above-ground, which is very injurious to them.

You

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 117

You should observe to water them well, to settle the earth to their roots; and cover the surface of the ground with mulch, to prevent the sun and wind from penetrating to the roots of the plants.

AT this season you may plant out the two sorts of Laurel-leaved Tulip trees, the Carolina Bay, Candle-berry Myrtle, Carolina Spindle tree, Evergreen Cassine, Tupelo, and such other exoticks as are intended to be naturalized to this climate: and as these are to be turned out of the pots, so the outside of the balls of earth only should be taken off, to give room for the new fibres to shoot out.

YOU may now sow Evergreen Oak Acorns, and the seeds of Firs, Pines, Cedars, Cypress, Magnolias, Tulip tree; as also seeds of most exotick trees, which are brought from Carolina, Virginia, and the more northern parts of America. The particular directions for doing this are exhibited in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY.

THE begining of this month you may graft Hollies, and about the middle you may inarch Firs, Pines, Junipers, &c. by which method you may propagate some of the scarce sorts; but the trees thus raised will never grow so large as those raised from seeds, the

118 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

stocks seldom keeping pace in their growth with the trees inarched, so that they are in danger of being blown out; for which reason whenever this is practised, the inarchment should be as near the ground as possible

You should now look over your grafts, and observe where the loam is much cracked, to renew it, lest the drying winds penetrate to the grafts, and destroy them. And look over your buds which are now shooting, and where you observe their tops infested with insects, and their leaves curled, you should pull them off before the insects spread too far.

KEEP the ground clean between your rows of trees in the nursery; for if weeds are permitted to grow this month, they will soon overtop young trees, and greatly weaken them: for there is nothing more prejudicial to trees, than suffering the weeds to grow amongst them, especially in the spring season.

IF this month should prove dry, you must diligently water your seed-beds of Evergreens, forest trees, and shrubs, which should be shaded from the sun in the heat of the day; also the young plantations which were drawn out of the seed-bed; and the stocks for fruit-trees, which have been lately planted, must be watered in very dry weather; for these
being

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 119

being small, the sun and wind will soon penetrate to their roots, and dry them up. This is to be understood of small plantations; for in large nurseries, it would be a great work to water all the stocks.

THE beds wherein you sowed seeds either in autumn or the last month, should now be carefully weeded; for the young trees will many of them begin to appear, so that if the weeds are permitted to grow, their roots will be so much entangled with the plants, as to render it very difficult to pull them up without drawing the plants up with them; and as the weeds are of a quicker growth than the plants, so they will soon over top them; and retard their growth. The tubs or pots of Cedars, which are beginning to come up, must now be removed to a shady situation; for too much sun will soon destroy these young plants. You must now be careful to guard your seed-beds of Pines and Firs, which, toward the end of the month will begin to appear, from the birds, which are very apt to peck off the tops of the young plants, as they thrust out of the ground, with the husk of the seeds upon them, which are always brought up upon the head of the plants.

Work to be done in the PLEASURE-GARDEN.

YOUR gravel walks, which were broken up and turned the last month, should in the beginning of this be raked level and rolled, that they may be ready for use; and your grass walks, must now be duly mowed, for this is a season when most people delight to walk out, so that the walks of the garden ought to be well kept. Beside, where this is neglected, at this season, the grass will soon become rank and coarse, so as to be some time before it can be gotten fine again, where the greatest care is taken of it.

CLEAN the borders of your pleasure garden from weeds, and tie up all your tall growing plants to sticks, to prevent their being broken, or blown down by wind.

YOU may now sow such annual flowers in your borders, as do not require any artificial heat to bring them forward, as Candy Tuft, Venus Looking glass, Lupines of several sorts, Sweet Peas, Tangier Peas, Dwarf Lychnis, Lobel's Catchfly, Venus Navel-wort, Convolvulus Minor, Nasturtium Indicum, Flos Adonis, Lavatera, Oriental Mallow, Carthamus, or Bastard Saffron, Hieraciums of several sorts, Ja-
ceas,

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 121

ceas, Lotuses of several kinds, Snails, Caterpillars, Linarias, Securidaca, Astragaluses, Moldavicas, with several other hardy kinds of annual flowers, which thrive better, if sown where they are to remain, than if they are transplanted; therefore they should be sown thin in patches, upon the borders of the pleasure-garden; and when they are come up, they should be thined, leaving but few plants in each patch to flower, that they may be the stronger.

IN this month you should sow most sorts of hardy perennial and biennial plants in your flower nursery, which were not sown the former month; as Canterbury Bells, Columbines, Sweet Williams, Pinks, Carnations, Hollihocks, French Honeysuckles, Stock Gilliflowers, Wall-flowers, with many other sorts, which are raised in the flower nursery to supply the borders of the pleasure-garden.

THE begining of this month you may make some slender hot-beds, to sow such of the annuals as require a little warmth to bring them forward; but will do better, if raised under a covering of mats than under glasses, which draw them too much; and though they are somewhat later in this management, yet there is no inconvenience in that, because they

122 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

they are designed to come in autumn, when there is a scarcity of other flowers, which renders them the more acceptable: of these are the African, French Marigold, *Convolvulus Major*, Balsamines, Marvel of Peru, Sweet Sultan, Indian Pink, with some others.

YOU must now make fresh hot-beds for transplanting your tender annuals, as *Amaranthuses*, *Amaranthoides*, Double striped Balsamines, &c. which must be brought forward at this season; otherwise they will not arrive to any degree of beauty, which chiefly consists in their strength.

YOU should now transplant the young plants of the China Starwort, either upon a moderate hot-bed, or on a warm border, observing to water and shade them until they have taken root.

PUT some more roots of *Tuberoses* into a moderate hot-bed, to succeed those which were planted the former month, that there may be a continuance of their flowers through the season.

THE seeds of choice Carnations and Pinks must now be sown, either in pots, tubs, or borders; but you must be careful not to bury the seeds too deep, by which they are often destroyed. These must be duly watered in
dry

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 123

dry weather, otherwise the plants will not come up.

YOUR tubs of seedling Auriculas and Polyanthus must be carefully screened from the sun; for if they are exposed to its full heat but one day, it will destroy them while they are young; you must also frequently refresh them with water.

SET sticks to your Carnations, which now begin to shoot up their spindles for flowering; and fasten them to prevent their being broken by the wind; and you should be careful to guard them from sparrows, otherwise these birds will peck off the leaves to the stumps.

YOUR fine Auriculas will now begin to shew their beautiful flowers; therefore the pots should be removed under some covert, to preserve them from wet, which would wash the mealiness from off their flowers, in which great part of their beauty consists: they should also be defended from the heat of the sun, which would hasten their decay; but they must have as much free air as possible, otherwise they will draw up very weak. These pots are usually placed on shelves, which are framed so as to rise above each other, which is proper for these flowers, as they are of humble growth, otherwise the pots must be taken up to view
the

the flowers: but as these stands are always covered over to keep off the rain and sun, so the front should be kept open at all times, when the weather will permit: and those of them, from which you would save seeds, should be moved into the open air, as soon as they are fully blown, and placed where they may have the morning sun, and a free air, without which they will not produce good seeds.

THIS is also a good season for taking off the slips of your choice Auriculas, to make an increase of them. These slips should be put into small pots, and placed in the shade, observing to water them as they may require it, until they have taken root; but if any of the slips taken off, should be destitute of fibres, you should cover them with small glasses, to forward their putting out of roots.

THE beds of fine Ranunculuses, Anemones, Tulips, and Hyacinths, which are now in flower, should be covered either with mats or cloths, to defend them from wet, and the heat of the sun; by which method, they may be preserved a much longer time in beauty: but you must observe to open them every morning and evening, that they may enjoy

as much of the free air as possible, without which they will not do well.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you may take up the roots of Saffron, Colchicums, Yellow Autumnal Narcissus, and such other bulbous-rooted flowers as blow at Michaelmas, whose leaves are now decayed, so that the sooner they are taken up, they will be the better. These may be kept out of the ground until July, when they must be planted again.

You may now transplant those sorts of Evergreens, which have not begun to shoot, with great safety, provided the air is clouded, and there is a prospect of rain in a short time; but if the ground is very dry, where they are to be planted, you should open large holes where the trees are to be placed, and pour a large quantity of water into each, so as to render the ground like pap or mud; then place the trees therein, and after the earth is filled in about the roots, make it hollow like a basin, to contain water; and cover the surface with mulch, to prevent the sun and air from penetrating the ground to dry their roots; and repeat watering the trees once a week, provided the weather should prove dry.

126 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

WHERE Phillyreas, Alaternuses, Laurels, Laurustinuses, or other hardy evergreen trees, are grown rude, they may now be reduced to the figure you intend, by cutting their branches in close to the stems; and when they shoot, they may be trained to the order desired.

*Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE-
GARDEN.*

ANEMONIES, Ranunculuses of various kinds, Polyanthuses, Auriculas, Tulips, Crown Imperials, Hepaticas, Hyacinths of various sorts, Narcissuses, Daffodils, Jonquils, Violets, Muscarias, Dwarf-flag Iris, Great Snowdrop, Spring Cyclamens, Spring Chelidoniums, Pulsatillas, Bulbous Fumitory, Rose-root, Ducks-foot or May Apple, Wood Anemomy, Friers Cowl, Italian Arum, Double Ladies Smock, Double Pilewort, Starry Hyacinths, Dens Canis, Double Daisies, Fritillarias of various kinds, Gentianella, Double Caltha Palustris, Columbines, large green-flowered Ornithogalum, Persian Lily, Orchises of several sorts, Sanguinaria, Solomons Seal, American Lungwort, Meadia, Hemoracallis with white flowers, Double Saxifrage, Venetian Vetch, Lychnises, Alysson Creticum, Bugule, Cats-foot, Lily
of

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 127

of the valley, Dames Violet, Leopards-bane, Honeywort, Leontopetalon, Hearts-ease, Periwinkle, with single flowers both small and large, as also with double flowers of a purple colour, Borage-leaved Verbascum, blue-flowered Perennial Moth-mullein, with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

LILAC with white, purple, and blue flowers, Persian Lilac with Privet leaves, commonly called the Persian Jasmine, Persian Lilac with cut leaves, Laburnums, Double-flowering Peach tree, Double-flowering Pear tree, Cherry Plum, Almond with white and Peach-coloured Blossoms, Amelanchier, Aria Theophrasti, Viburnum, Bird Cherry, Cornish Cherry, Arbor Judæ, Double-flowering Cherry, Cockspur Hawthorn, Dwarf Almond with single and double flowers, Hypericum frutex, Benjamin tree, Berberry tree, Bilberry bush, Bladder nut, Service tree, Turpentine tree, Early white and Italian Honeyfuckles, Yellow Jasmine, Laurustinus, Scorpion Sena, Caragana, Eastern Bladder Sena, Dwarf Cherry, Coronilla 'Cretica', Siberian Cytisus, Single Virgin Rose, Shrubby Spring Anonis, Hairy Cytisus, Laurel,

128 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Apr.

Laurel, Pyracantha, Glastonberry Thorn, Nettle tree, Dogwood, Spindle tree, Quicken or Mountain Ash, Scarlet flowering Maple, Horse Chestnut, Spirea frutex, Upright and Fly Honey-suckle, with some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

BROOK LIME, Water-creffes, Wood-roof, Mouse-ear, Daisy, Rue-leaved Whitlow-grass, Bugle, Shepherds-purse, Dandelion, White Saxifrage, Coltsfoot, Hare-bells, Ground Ivy, Dead-nettle, Wood Sorrel, Cowslip, Primrose, Radish-root.

Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE and STOVE.

YOUR Bays, Laurustinuses, Myrtles, Cistuses, Teucriums, Phlomis, Olives, Carobs, Melianthes, Tree Wormwood, Oleanders, and other hardy plants, may be taken out of the green-house toward the middle or latter end of the month, according as the season proves favourable, that the Orange trees, and other less tender plants, may be placed thinner, that they may have a greater share of air; but

but those plants which are taken out, should be placed where they may be defended from cold winds; otherwise they will suffer, being made somewhat tender by standing in the house.

SUCH of your Orange trees, or other exotick plants, as want shifting, should now be removed; and those which require larger pots or tubs must be placed therein, observing, when you take them out of the tubs or pots, to pare off all mouldy or decayed roots, and wash their stems and heads, to cleanse them from the filth they have contracted by remaining in the house; and when they are new planted, they should be duly watered; and those which are exposed to the open air, should be shaded in the heat of the day from the violence of the sun. By removing the Orange trees early in this month, they will have time to make new roots before they are set abroad, and will have strength to produce their flowers in plenty.

THOSE orange trees which are not removed at this season, should have the earth taken out of the tops and sides of the tubs or pots, and filled up again with fresh rich earth, and their stems and heads cleaned as before: this will strengthen them greatly for flowering; but you

K

should

should never apply any hot kinds of dung to the surface of the earth, as is by some unskillfully practised, to the destruction of their trees. If therefore you would lay any dung upon the surface of the earth, it should be rotten neats dung; but this should not be done in too great quantities; and it should be thoroughly roted.

OPEN the windows of your green-house most part of the day, when the air is mild: for at this season, the plants require a large share of fresh air, otherwise their shoots will draw up weak, and produce but few flowers, and will be less able to bear the open air, when they are removed out of the house.

YOU may now graft Oranges, Jasmines, and other tender plants, by approach; but such as will take buds, are better if propagated that way; for trees inarched seldom unite so well with the graft, and never grow to so large a size as those which are buded; so that this method of inarching trees is seldom practised, but on those sorts which cannot be propagated so easy any other way, or for the sake of having fruit upon the trees soon; for by inarching a branch with young fruit on it, the graft may be separated from the old tree when it is well united with the stock, and so a bearing tree
may

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 131

may be procured the same season, but these seldom last long or make much progress.

THE bark-beds in the stove, which have declined their heat, and were not renewed the former month, should now be stirred up with a fork almost to the bottom, and some fresh bark added thereto, which will renew their heat; at the same time you should shift such of your plants as require it, into larger pots, giving them fresh earth; and then plunge them down into the bark again immediately; but this must be done when the air is warm, because there will be a necessity to open the glasses pretty often, and, if the air be sharp, it will injure the plants.

YOUR Ananas or Pine apples must now be carefully tended, observing to refresh them often with water, as also to preserve a kindly heat in the beds, and cover the glasses every night to keep them warm; but when the sun is very hot, they should have air admitted by raising the glasses in proportion to the warmth of the season, otherwise they will be in danger of scorching; and the young plants, which are for the next year's fruit, should be shifted into the pots they are designed to remain in until August, when they must be planted into

larger pots, in which they are to remain for fruiting.

SHIFT such of your seedling exotick plants as require it, into larger pots, and stir up the bark of the beds to renew their heat, adding some fresh tan to the beds; and then plunge the pots down again, observing to water and shade them until they have taken root.

THE Coffee trees will now begin to flower; therefore their leaves and stems must be cleaned from filth, by washing it off whenever it appears; and refresh the trees with water twice a week, which will cause them to flower strong.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

GERANIUMS of several sorts, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Candy Tuft tree, African Asphodel with broad leaves, Anthericum with Aloe leaves, and two or three sorts with Onion leaves, Tree Scabious, Cistuses, Anemonospermuses, Mesembrianthemis of several sorts, Aloes of several kinds, Coronilla argentea Cretica, Cytisus Canariensis, Medicago frutescens, Aleppo Cyclamens, Hermannias of four or five sorts, Colutea Æthiopica, Polygala Africana, Myrtocistus,

Apr. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 133

cistus, two sorts of African Shrubby Tansey, Three-leaved African Sumach, Melianthus minor foetidus, Cotyledons, Turnera, Malpighia of two or three sorts, Humble plant, Cistus Halimi folio, Olive tree, Watsonia, African Sisyrinchium, Arum Æthiopicum, Crinum, Cunonia, African Hyacinth with smooth and with watered leaves, Dumb Cane, Rauwolfia, Waltheria, Atamusco Lily, Pancratium, Small creeping Cereus, Cannacorus, Ixia of three or four sorts, Antholiza, Shrubby African Starwort of two sorts, Tetragonia, Clusia, some sorts of Acacia, Diosma of two sorts, African Shrubby Sage with yellow and blue flowers, Shrubby Stachys from the Canaries, Teucrium Bœticum, Shrubby Convolvulus from Crete, Heliotropium Scorodoniæ folio, Coral tree, Hæmanthus Colchici foliis, black flowering Lotus, Tree Houseleek, Crassula, African Wood Sorrel, with large purple and with yellow flowers, China Rose, Elichrysum, Orientale, Spanish Toad-flax, Ornithogalum from the Cape of Good Hope, African Marigold two sorts, Chrysocoma, Kleinia, Euphorbiums, Sorrel tree, Lycium with narrow leaves, Canary Shrubby Fox-glove, Othonna two or three sorts, Peruvian Heliotrope, with some others.



M A Y.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

IF the weather in this month proves hot and dry, it greatly retards the growth of most esculent plants; and particularly the Beans and Peas which are in flower (especially those on dry lands) which suffer greatly; most of their blossoms falling off before their maturity, so that they are not succeeded by fruit. But when this month happens to be wet, the markets are plentifully stocked with most sorts of garden ware. But this does not only increase the quantity of plants, but also a great plenty of weeds, whereby the labour of a kitchen-garden is more than double of what is required in a dry season; for if the young crops are neglected but a very short time in moist weather,

weather, the weeds will get the better of them, and weaken them so much as they will hardly recover their full strength again; nor will the plants (with all possible care afterward) ever arrive to the size they would have grown to, provided they had not been stunted by the weeds. Besides, many sorts of weeds will perfect their seeds in a short time, which, being shed upon the ground, will occasion a great deal of labour for several years to extirpate them again. Among these are Shepherd's-pouch, Groundsel, Dandelion, Fumitory, Pimpernel, Chickweed, and some others. And those of them which do not seed so early, will (if let stand) establish themselves so firmly, as to occasion much labour to get them out of the ground; so that it is certainly the best way to clear all sorts of crops from weeds as soon as possible in the spring, and to keep them constantly so.

THE same caution is necessary in regard to your dunghills; for, at this season, there will be great quantities of weeds produced thereon; as also upon the heaps of compost, which, if not destroyed in time, will shed their seeds, whereby the garden and pots will be plentifully stocked, from the manure or compost which is carried into it.

136 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

IN the begining of this month you should sow Purslane, in the open ground, and a little Endive for blanching early in the season, but this which is sown so early is apt to run up for seed very soon; continue to sow all the sorts of small sallit herbs every three or four days, otherwise there will not be a supply of such herbs which are young; for, at this season, they soon grow too large for use: but these should be sown in a north border, where they may have little sun.

Sow Peas, and plant Beans, for latter crops; but this should be done on a moist soil; otherwise they seldom succeed well, unless the season is uncommonly wet and cold.

PLANT Kidney Beans for a second crop: the large Dutch sort and the scarlet blossom Beans are the best for this season, because they will continue bearing much longer than any other, and are also far better tasted: about the twenty-third day of this month you should sow Cauliflowers, for winter use, observing to shade the bed with mats every day, and keep the ground moist; otherwise the seeds will dry, and the plants will come up very sparingly; the plants which are raised at this season will produce their heads in October,
November,

November, and in mild seasons some will continue till Christmas.

IN moist weather, plant out to the places where they are to remain, the red and white Cabbages and Savoys for winter use, and transplant the first sown Celery into drills for blanching, which will come early, if planted in this month.

THE early crops of Spinach and Radishes being by this time taken off the ground, the weeds should be cleared from the Cauliflower and Cabbage plants, Beans, or any other crops, which were planted on the same ground; and, in moist weather, draw some earth about the stems of the plants, which will keep the roots moist, and prevent the sun and wind from drying their stems, to which if they are exposed, it will greatly retard the growth of the plants; but in doing of this, great care should be taken not to raise the earth so high about them, as to fall into the center of the leaves, which will entirely destroy the Cauliflower plants.

TRANSPLANT Radishes for seed, placing them in rows three feet distance, and two feet asunder in the rows from each other; observing to make choice of such only as have long, strait, well-coloured roots and small tops, rejecting

jecting all such as are forked or short rooted ; for which reason it is, that the most curious Gardeners never save seeds from such as remain where they were sown, because they cannot judge of the length or goodness of their roots.

THE Cucumbers which are under frames, and have not a sufficient depth of earth upon the dung, must be carefully shaded with mats in the heat of the day ; for the sun is often too violent at this season for these plants through glasses ; but the Melon plants should be gradually hardened to bear the open air in the day time in warm weather, for the greater share of air they enjoy at this season, the better will the fruit set upon the Vines ; and where the earth is laid of a proper thickness upon the dung, the Vines will not hang their leaves but bear the sun well, for it is from the shallowness of the earth on the beds, that the Vines of Cucumbers and Melons are so frequently observed to shrink in hot weather, and this also occasions their decay much sooner than they would do, if their roots enjoyed a proper depth of soil ; so that where the beds are but shallow in earth, the Vines will require shading in the great heat of the day : but the mats should not remain on too long, which
is

May: *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 139

is as great a fault on the other side; for it is only the mid-day sun which can be too violent for the plants, and that only in extreme hot days, which sometimes happen in this month. But such plants as have been raised under hand glasses for the second crop, should have full liberty to grow, by raising the glasses upon three bricks or forked sticks, and the ends of the plants laid out from under the glasses: but this must not be done too soon, especially if the nights are cold; which if it should so happen after the plants are laid out, they must be covered with mats every night to prevent their being nipped by the frost.

WHEN the Melon plants are suffered to run out from under the glasses, the paths between the ridges should be filled up level with the ground on the ridges, and troden down very hard; this will cause the fruit to set, provided you give the plants no water.

THE early Cauliflowers will now begin to appear in the center of the plants; therefore they should be carefully looked over every day, breaking down some of the inner leaves of such as appear in flower (as is usually termed) to preserve them white; for if they are exposed to the sun and air, they will change yellow in a short time.

H O E

140 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

Hoe winter crops of Onions, Carrots, Leeks, Parsneps, and Beets, to clear them from weeds; for, by stirring of the ground, the plants are greatly forwarded in their growth; and the keeping your crops clear from weeds in this month will be of great service to them, and save much labour the succeeding months.

TRANSPLANT Cilifia, Cos, Imperial, and Brown Dutch Lettuces into north borders, to succeed those planted the last month; and toward the end of the month you may sow some Cos, Cilifia, Brown Dutch, and common Cabbage Lettuces, to supply the table in August; but these seeds must be sown in an open situation.

Sow Finnochia in drills, about eighteen inches or two feet asunder, to succeed that which was sown the last month; and draw the earth up to the plants which are almost full grown, to blanch them.

N. B. This should have a light, rich, moist soil, when sown at this season; otherwise it is apt to run to seed, especially if the season proves dry.

You may yet plant slips of Sage, Rosemary, Hyssop, Lavender, Marum, Mastich, and most other aromattick plants, observing to
shade

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 141

shade and water them until they have taken root; but it is better to plant them just before they shoot, because those shoots which have been produced the same season, are tender, and seldom take so well.

THE early Cabbages now begin to turn their inner leaves for cabbaging, which may be forwarded by tying their leaves together, either with a withy or bafs mat, as is practised by the Gardeners near London, which causes them to whiten within much sooner than they otherwise would, whereby they have them fit for the market earlier in the season.

LOOK over your Artichokes again in this month, and pull up all the plants from the roots, which have been produced since the old stocks were slipped; for these will draw the nourishment from the plants which were left for fruit, and cause the heads to be small. You should also cut off all the small Artichokes which are produced from the sides of the stems; for if these are permitted to grow, they will render the principal Artichokes on the top very small. These the Gardeners term Suckers, and they are, by the Kitchen Gardeners, tied up in bunches, and carried to market. They are frequently eaten raw with
vinegar,

142 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

vinegar, salt, and pepper, and are by some much esteemed.

YOU may now sow Skirrets, Salsafy, and Scorzonera, for the last crop; for that which was sown early, will soon run up to seed; especially the Skirret, which, when sown too early, is seldom good.

SOW Turneps, when there is a prospect of rain in a short time, which will bring up the plants very soon; and hoe those Turneps which were sown the last month, leaving them about eight or ten inches asunder, which will be sufficient distance for those which are intended to be drawn very young.

TOWARD the latter end of the month, should be sown some Broccoli for spring use; and a latter crop of Savoy should be sown, to succeed those which were sown the former month, for these will be fit for use after Christmas, when the others are gone.

SOW Cucumbers in the open ground, toward the end of the month, to produce some fruit for pickling; and plant out Gourds and Pompions upon dunghills, &c. where they should be allowed a large compass to spread; otherwise their vines will interfere and spoil each other.

T H E

TH E stalks of your Onions, which were planted for seed, will be now grown to their full height; therefore you should provide a parcel of stakes, which should be driven into the ground, at about eight feet distance from each other in the rows; and some lines should be fastened from stake to stake on each side, to support the stems of the Onions; otherwise they will be broken down by the wind, whereby a great part of them will be spoiled.

TH E same care should be taken of your Cabbages, Carrots, Parsneps, Savoys, Broccoli, and Leeks, which were planted for seed, and are now run up to flower; for when the seeds are formed, it will render their heads too heavy to be supported by their stems without help, for as they grow pretty tall, they are frequently broken by the wind, so that they should always be supported by lines and stakes as soon as they begin to flower.

TH E Tomatos for soups, and the Capsicums for pickling, which have been raised upon hot-beds, should be transplanted to the places where they are designed to remain: toward the end of the month, if the weather proves favourable, the Tomatos should be planted near a wall, pale, hedge, or espalier, to which the plants when grown must be

144 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

be fastened to support them, otherwise they will fall on the ground, which will prevent the fruit from ripening, and also cause it to rot in the autumn, especially in moist weather: the *Capficums* should be planted in a rich soil and a warm situation, and in dry weather they must be frequently watered to have plenty of pods.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

RADISHES, Spinach, several sorts of Cabbage Lettuce, Sorrel, Mint, Balm, Winter Savory, Borage, Bugloss, Spring Coleworts, Tragopogon, the young shoots of which are by some preferred to Asparagus, young Onions, Sives, Asparagus, Peas, Beans, some early Artichokes, Cauliflowers, early Cabbages, young Carrots from under walls or hedges, Cucumbers, Melons, Purslane, and Kidney-beans on hot-beds, Mushrooms, Parsley, Coriander, Chervil, Cresses, Turneps, Mustard, and all sorts of small sallating, early Turneps, Burnet, Tarragon, with many other sorts of spring herbs.

Work

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

IN the begining of this month you must look over your wall and espalier trees, and carefully take off all foreright shoots, and such as are luxuriant or ill placed; and train such kindly branches as you would preserve, regularly to the wall or espalier, which will prevent your trees from growing into confusion; and strengthen the fruit branches, as also admit the sun and air to the fruit, which are often obstructed by the luxuriant growth of the branches, to the great prejudice of the fruit. The neglect of doing this work early will occasion much more trouble, and greatly injure your trees. For where this work is neglected in this month, the trees cannot be brought into so good order by any after-management the same year.

WHERE Apricocks and Peaches are too thick, they should be thined the begining of this month, observing never to leave two or more fruit together (as is too often practised by covetous persons); though there be but a small crop on the trees, for this will make those which are left on much larger and better

L

flavoured,

flavoured, and render the trees stronger for succeeding years : whereas, when they are overcharged with fruit, they are often so much weakened as not to be recoverable in less than three or four years, notwithstanding they may be under the most skilful management; besides, one dozen of fair well-flavoured fruit is preferable to five or six dozen of those which are small and ill-nourished, and will sell for more money in the markets. The distance which should be allowed to all sorts of fruits must be proportionable to their usual sizes; for instance, the middling or small Peaches and Nectarines, five or six inches asunder is sufficient; but for the large sorts, eight inches is full near enough. This must also be proportioned to the strength of the trees, and also of the branches on which they grow: for weak trees should have a less number of fruit left on them than those which are strong, because they are less capable of nourishing them; and such branches as are weak, must not have much fruit left on them, because they cannot be well nourished, and too great quantities of fruit often destroy the branches. Peaches and Nectarines, whose fruits are only produced on the shoots of the former year, should not have more than two or three fruit left

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 147

left upon a branch where it is strong, and but one on those which are very weak.

You must now look carefully over your Vines, and stop such shoots as have fruit on them at the second or third joint beyond the fruit, and train the branches close to the wall in a regular order; but such shoots as are designed for bearing the succeeding year, should not be stoped until the latter end of the next month, or the beginning of July; for when these are stoped too soon, the lower buds often push out weak shoots, which is a great prejudice to them. You must now rub off all weak trailing branches, close to the places where they are produced; for if these are suffered to remain, they will occasion a great confusion of branches, and weaken the bearing shoots. If this be duly observed, there will never be any necessity for divesting the shoots of their leaves, to let the air and sun to the fruit, as is by some unskilful persons too often practised, to the injury both of the fruit and branches. For the fruit always require to be screened by some leaves, otherwise the sun and air will harden, and, instead of accelerating, will retard their ripening; and the shoots require their leaves to inspire the particles of air, and to discharge the moisture.

148 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

IN moist weather you must look carefully after snails, especially in the evenings and mornings, or after warm showers, when they will come from behind wall trees, and out of their places of shelter, so may be easily taken; for these are great enemies to choice fruit, but especially to Peaches, Nectarines, and Apricocks.

IF the season should prove dry, you must not forget to refresh all such trees as have been lately planted, with water; in doing of which, it will be proper to sprinkle the water over all their branches, which will be of great service to them in washing off dust and filth, which their leaves may have contracted; and open the pores of the shoots, which in very dry weather are many times almost closed, whereby the trees suffer greatly; nor is the water, when poured to the root only, capable of relieving them when in this condition; this is one reason why rain is much more effectual than artificial watering: but these waterings should be always performed in the evening, after the heat of the day is over, that the water may have time to soak down to the roots, and the moisture may be dried off from the leaves by the morning sun; for when this is done in the morning, the heat of the sun coming

coming upon the trees soon after, the leaves are frequently scalded thereby, the spherical drops of water which remain on their surface, causing the rays of the sun to converge to a focus meeting in a point.

K E E P the borders about your fruit trees clear from weeds, and also from all strong-growing plants, which will exhaust the goodness of the soil, to the great prejudice of your trees; and this should also be carefully observed in the nursery for the same reason.

A B O U T the middle of this month you must look over your vineyard Grapes, taking off all dangling shoots, and stop those which have fruit upon them, which must now be fastened to the stakes, to prevent their being broken by winds; but the shoots for the next year's bearing must be trained upright to the stakes, and not stoped until the end of the next month, or the beginning of July, for the reasons before given for the Vines.

Y O U must also observe to keep the ground in the vineyard very clear from weeds, and suffer no sorts of plants whatever to grow between the rows of Vines; for nothing can be more prejudicial, than permitting this in vineyards.

THE Vines, and other fruits trees which are against hot walls, should now have a large share of air, whenever the weather will permit, otherwise their shoots will be drawn too weak, and the trees thereby rendered short in their duration: the Apricocks, Cherries, and other stone fruit trees against these walls, should be frequently watered, for as the rain will be screened from the borders by the covers, so this must be supplied by water.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you should break off the clay from those trees which were grafted in the spring, and loosen their bandage; otherwise they will be subject to break off where they are pinched with the bafs in windy weather.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; L'Amozelle, or Lord Cheyne's Green, Bergamot de Paque, and Bessy de Chaumontelle, from espalier trees, where they have been well preserved, also Parkinson's Warden, and the Cadillac for baking.

APPLES; Golden Russet, Stone Pippin, John Apple, Winter Russet, Pomme d'Api, Oaken Pin, Pile's Russet, and sometimes the Nonpareil, when they have been carefully preserved.

CHERRIES;

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 151

C H E R R I E S ; 'the May and May Duke ; and, in a warm foil, some scarlet Strawberries, toward the end of the month in very warm situations, Gooseberries, and green Currants for tarts ; and in the forcing frame, Masculine Apricocks, Nutmeg Peaches, with some other early fruits.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

I N this month you must carefully keep the ground hoed between your young trees ; for nothing is more injurious to them, than to suffer weeds, or any other plants, to grow amongst them, for these rob the trees of their nourishment ; and if weeds are permitted to get strength in this month, it will be great trouble to root them out afterwards. Nor should you plant any kitchen herbs between your rows of trees (as is by some unskilful and covetous persons practised) ; for these will draw all the nourishment from the trees, and render them weak and unhealthy.

T H E middle of this month you must look over your grafts, and take off the loam from them ; and those which were fastened with bandage, should now be untied ; otherwise the

graft will be pinched at the stock, and be in danger of breaking off with the wind; and where there are any shoots put out from the stocks below the graft, they should be rubbed off, otherwise they would rob the grafts of their nourishment. You should also look over your trees, which were buded the last season; and where you observe the leaves to curl up by being infested with insects, you should take them off, otherwise they will spoil the upright shoot; and if there are any shoots produced from the stocks, these should also be intirely rubbed off, for the reason before given.

WHERE your buds or grafts have made vigorous shoots, it will be proper to support them with short stakes, otherwise they will be in danger of being broken out of the stocks by strong winds, especially those which are in exposed situations.

YOUR seed-beds of young plants must now be carefully weeded, and in dry weather frequently refreshed with water; otherwise the young plants will be so stunted, as not to make any progress the same season. Your young plants of Cedars, Firs, Pines, Cypress, Bay, Arbutus, Juniper, Holly, &c. must now be often refreshed with water; but it should not be given to them in large quantities, but rather

May: *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 153

rather often and moderate. You must also observe to shade them from the sun in the middle of the day, to which if they are too much exposed, while young, it is often very destructive to them, as are also the drying winds, which frequently reign in the spring, and are very often the destruction of numbers of these plants, by drying their tender stems.

You may now make layers of the Double and single Virgins Bower, and of other climbing plants; for many of these will not put out roots from the old woody shoots, but the tender branches of the same year's growth, laid down in this month, will take root very well. You may also lay down Alaternuses, Phillyreas, and some other evergreen trees, which also take root better from young shoots, than from older branches.

If this month should prove very dry, you must continue to water such Evergreens, and other young trees, as were removed the last month, otherwise they will suffer greatly. But you should do this with caution, for many people destroy their trees by over watering them. You should also renew the mulch round the trees, to prevent the sun and wind from drying the ground. Where the roots of new-planted trees are carefully mulched, if they

154 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.
have water once a week in dry weather it will
be sufficient.

Work to be done in the FLOWER-GARDEN.

THE begining of this month you should
take up your choice Hyacinth roots, which are
past flowering, and lay them horizontally in a
bed of earth to ripen, leaving their leaves and
stems out of the ground to decay, in the man-
ner directed in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY,
under the article Hyacinth.

SHADE your choice Tulips, Ranunculu-
ses, Anemonies, and other curious flowers now
blowing, from the sun, during the heat of the
day; which will continue them in beauty
much longer, than if they are fully exposed to
the weather.

TAKE up the roots of the Saffron and the
other sorts of autumnal Crocus, as also Colchi-
cums, autumnal Amaryllis, and Pancrati-
um, whose leaves are by this time decayed, and
spread them on mats in the shade to dry;
after which they may be kept in bags until
July, when it will be a proper season for
planting them again. But you should guard
them from rats and mice, otherwise they will
eat them up.

THIS

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 155

T H I S is also a good season for to transplant such of the tuberosse-rooted flowers, as blow in autumn, which should be done when their leaves are decayed, as the Cyclamen or Sow-bread, Autumnal Pancrarium, Starry Autumnal Hyacinth, &c.

C L E A N the borders of your flower-garden from weeds, which, if permitted to grow at this season, will be the more difficult, and cause a deal of trouble to extirpate afterwards.

A B O U T the middle of this month, if the season proves favourable, you may plant out your hardy annuals, such as Marvel of Peru, Sweet Sultan, China Aster or Starwort, Sweet Reseda called Mignonette d'Egypt, French and African Marigolds, Female Balsamine, Capsicum, Brown Jolly or Egg plant, and several other sorts, which, if artfully disposed, will afford an agreeable pleasure, after the beauty of the spring is past; but these plants should be thoroughly inured to the open air, before they are transplanted out of the hot-bed.

S O W dwarf annual flower-seeds in patches upon the borders of the flower-garden, where they are intended to remain, as Candy Tuft, Venus Looking-glass, Venus Navelwort, Dwarf Annual Stock, Dwarf Lychnis, Lobel's Catch-fly,

156 *The Gardeners Kalender.* May.

fly, Convolvulus Minor, Snails and Caterpillars, with many other kinds: these will succeed those which were sown the former month, and hereby the borders may be kept in beauty through the season: and also plant the several kinds of Lupine, Sweet-scented Peas, Tangier Peas, Seeds of the Indian Nasturtium, Large Convolvulus, and other climbing annual plants, where they may have room to spread, and have some support; in which places they will flower, and make a beautiful appearance late in the autumn.

TRANSPLANT such biennial and perennial flowers as were sown in the flower-nursery in March and April, into beds of fresh earth in the nursery, where they may remain till the latter end of September, or the beginning of October, when they must be removed into the borders of the flower-garden: of these sorts are Canterbury Bells, French Honeysuckles, Sweet Williams, Pinks, Columbines, Fox-gloves, Greek Valerian, Hollyhocks, with many others.

TIE up the spindles of Carnations, divesting them of all side pods, which, if permitted to remain on, would weaken the top and principal flower; and also put down stakes to fasten the stems of all tall flowers which
are

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 157

are to blow, otherwise they will be in danger of being broken by the winds.

IN this month, if the young flower-stalks of the several sorts of *Lychnidea*, the late flowering *After* or *Starwort* with narrow leaves, and the double scarlet *Lychnis*, are cut off and planted in a shady border, they will take root very well, and this is the best method of propagating several of these perennial flowers. The cuttings of the *Starwort* will make good plants, and produce flowers the following autumn.

MAKE a fresh hot-bed for your *Amaranthuses*, *Double-striped Balsamine*, and other tender exotick annuals, and put them into large pots of good earth, placing them upon the hot-bed, and fill up the interstices with earth; if care be taken of them, at this time, they will be very strong and beautiful.

YOUR *Auriculas* which are now past flowering, should be removed into a shady situation (but not under the dropings of trees, which will rot them); in which place they must remain, until the heat of summer is over.

TRANSPLANT *Stock-gilliflowers*, *Wall-flowers*, *Seedling Pinks*, *Carnations*, and other perennial seedling fibrous-rooted flowers; and sow some seeds of annual, scarlet, and purple *Stock-*

158 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

Stock-gilliflowers, which will produce shorter plants, and many times will endure the cold better than those which are sown earlier and are larger.

TOWARD the latter end of the month you may take up such of the early blowing Tulip roots, whose leaves are decayed, also Spring Crocus, Snow-drops, and some of the forward Anemonies, if their leaves are decayed; after which those roots which are intended to be taken up should not be permitted to remain long in the ground.

PLANT some Tuberosé roots upon a moderate hot-bed, to succeed those planted in March and April; by which method, you may continue a succession of this fragrant flower until the end of October in beauty.

YOUR pots or tubs of seedling Irises, Narcissuses, Tulips, and other bulbous-rooted flowers, should be removed into a shady situation the beginning of this month (if it was not done in April), where they must remain until autumn; nothing being more injurious to these young roots, than to be exposed to the violence of the sun in summer, especially those which are in tubs or pots, those which are in beds should be also shaded with mats in the heat of the day.

TOWARD

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 159

TOWARD the end of this month, the leaves of the Guernsey and Belladonna Lilies will decay, at which time their roots should be transplanted; and, at this season, the roots may be safely transported, because they may be kept two months out of the ground without injury.

THE young plants of Scabiuses, Sweet Sultan, Indian Pink, Chrysanthemum, Bupthalmum, and Oriental Perficaria, may now be planted into the beds or borders of the flower-garden, where they will make a beautiful appearance when they flower. But this work should be done in moist weather, and the plants should be shaded until they have taken new root.

PLACE your pots of choice Carnations upon the stage where they are to flower, to protect them from vermin, which will otherwise infest them, and will harbour about the pots, so as not to be easily destroyed.

THE grass walks and lawns in the pleasure-garden, should now be duly mowed and rolled, otherwise the grass will soon grow rank and unsightly; and where Daisies, Plantain, or other weeds are mixed with the grass, they should be weeded out, otherwise many of their seeds will ripen and scatter, and thereby multiply

160 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

tiply their species, which will overpower the grass, and render the verdure less agreeable.

THE gravel walks should now be kept clean; for a little neglect at this season, will render it troublesome to bring them into good order again.

Plants now in Flower.

LATE-BLOWING Tulips, Anemonies, Ranunculuses, Pinks of several sorts, White and Yellow Asphodel, Lily of the Valley, Daiesies, Leucanthemums, Thrift, Red and White Valerian, Cyanus Major, Thalictrums of several kinds, Sage, Rosemary, Moth-mullein, Double Catchfly, Veronica multicaulis Pannonica, London Pride, Spanish Figwort, Geraniums of several kinds, Helianthemums, Turkey Perennial Poppy, Fiery Lily, Pionies of several sorts, Columbines, Monkshood, Fraxinella with Red and white flowers, Yellow Moly, Homer's Moly, Stock-gilliflowers, Wall-flowers, Orobus Viciæ foliis, Tragacantha, Leopard's-bane, Solomon's Seal, Yellow Asphodel Lily, Hyacinth of Peru, Dragon, Bistort, Rhapontic, Ladies Mantle, Tuberoſe Irises, Dwarf Annual Stock, Feathered Hyacinth, Ladies Slippe, Welsh Poppy, Birds-eye, Yellow Violet, Orchises,

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 161

Orchises, Hearts-ease, Double White Narcissus, Pulsatilla, Double Rockets, Corn-flags, English Hyacinth or Hare Bells, Yellow and Pompony Martagons, Starry Hyacinth, Blue Grape Hyacinth, Bulbous Iris, Flag-leaved Iris of several sorts, Tradescant's Spiderwort, Savoy Spiderwort, Double Purple and large Blue Periwinkles, Peach-leaved and Nettle-leaved Bell flower, Maudlin, Birthwort, Asarabacca, Cats-foot, Noli me tangere, Great Gentian, Honeywort, Mandrake, Greater Navelwort, Spotted Lungwort, Hedyсарum Clypeatum flore albo & rubro, Lychnidea Virginiana, Greek Valerian with white and blue flowers, Double white and red Bachelor's Button, Double White Mountain Ranunculus, Double Ragged Robbin, Double Feverfew, Foxglove of three or four sorts, Buphthalmums, Sea Ragwort, Double Saxifrage, Double Ladies Smock, Borage-leaved Auricula, Spanish Toad-flax, Spurges of several kinds, Grass-leaved Ranunculus, Honesty or Satten flower, Upright Speedwell, Yellow Eastern Bugloss, Garden Bugloss, Onobrychis, Scabiouses, Antirrhinum or Snapdragon, Eastern Veronica with fine cut leaves, Globularia, Dwarf Blue Ornithogalum, Perennial Adonis, Perennial Omphalodes, Portugal Dead

M

Nettle

162 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

Nettle with large flowers, Borage from Constantinople, Claytonia, Italian Arum, Yellow Alysson of Crete, Large Yellow Avens, Sea-Cabbage, Double Crowfoot, Annual Adonis with red and yellow flowers, Asarina, Meadia, Dodartia, Vulneraria, Daises of several colours, Matted Pink, Sea Pink, Androsace, Pionies of several sorts, with some others of less note.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

PHLOMIS or Jerusalem Sage, two or three sorts; Yellow Jasmine, Colutea Scorpoides, Oriental Colutea with bloody flowers, Lilacs several sorts; Early White, Italian, and Common Honeyfuckles; Gelder Rose, White Thorn, Flowering Ash, Bladder Nut, Cinnamon Rose, Monthly Rose, Damask Rose, Burnet-leaved Rose, Scotch Rose, Apple-bearing Rose, Horse Chestnut, Three thorned Acacia, Laburnums; Cytisus secundus clusii, *vulgo*; Lote or Nettle tree, Bladder Sena, Double-flowering Dwarf Almond, Cockspur Hawthorn, Double-flowering Hawthorn, Cinquefoil Shrub, Persian Lilac, Bird Cherry, Laurocerasus Lusitanicus Minor, Scarlet Horse Chestnut, Perfumed Cherry, Male Cistus of several sorts, Mallow tree, Arbor Judæ, Cytisus

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 163

tifus Lunatus, Sea Buckthorn, Spiræa Salicis folio, Spiræa Opuli folio, Spiræa Hyperici folio, Dwarf Medlar, Amelanchier, Candleberry Myrtle, Chamælæa tricoëcos, Christ's Thorn, Pistachia Nut, Pyracantha, Rosemary, Myrtle-leaved Sumach, Poison Ash, Virginia Service with Arbutus leaves, Wild Service or Quickbeam, Aria Theophrasti, True Service, Maple-leaved Service, Double-flowering Cherry, Purple Mountain Shrubby Rest Harrow, Hairy Cytifus, Viburnum, Dogwood, Euonymus, Privet, Black Haw, Plane tree, Common and Ash-leaved Maple, Flowering Ash, Coronilla Cretica, Common Broom, Shrubby Dyers Weed, Caragana, Bacteria, Diervilla, Clematifes of two or three sorts, Hardy American Annona, Button tree, Pishamin, Dwarf Tartarian Cytifus, Stœchas Purpurea, Gum Cistuses of three or four sorts, with some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

BEARS-BREECH, Sorrel, Wood Sorrel, Ladies Mantle, Lily of the Valley, Pimpernel, Brook-lime, Water-cress, Ground Ivy, Rest-harrow, Rosemary flowers, Deadnettle, Archangel, Clivers, Fumitary, Columbine, Herb

164 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

Paris, Silverweed or wild Tansey, Stonecrop
Woodroof, Mandrake leaves, Mouse-ear,
Daify, Dandelion, Betony, Groundsel, Mer-
cury, Adders-tongue, Borage, Bugloss, Bu-
gule, Woad, Poplar leaves, Shepherds Purse,
Ladies Smock, Piony flowers, Avens, Scurvy-
grafs, Chervil, Comfrey, Plantain, Teasle,
Navelwort, Horse-tail, Croswort, Greater
Blue-bottle, Musk Cranes-bill, Bean flowers,
Burnet, Spoted Lungwort.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

ABOUT the middle or latter end of this
month, if the weather be settled, and the
nights warm, you should bring forth your
Orange trees, and (if possible) take the ad-
vantage of a shower of rain for this work,
which will wash the dust from the surfaces
of their leaves, and greatly refresh them: you
should at this time (if you have not before
done it) take out the earth from the top of
the pots or tubs, and fill them up with fresh
rich earth, which will greatly encourage their
flowering, and cause them to make vigorous
shoots; and if their stems have not been
cleaned the preceding month, it should now
be

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 165

be done ; this is only meant for such trees as are not transplanted the same year.

Yo u may now inarch Oranges, Jasmines, Pomgranates, and other tender exotick trees, observing to place them where they may be sheltered from strong winds, which would displace the inarched shoots, if they were too much exposed thereto.

MA K E layers of Myrtles, Pomgranates, Jasmines, Granadillas, Capers, and other tender shrubs, observing to lay some mulch over them and supply them frequently with water, which will greatly facilitate their rooting, but it must not be given them in too great quantities.

In the middle of the day, if the weather prove hot, you should shade the glasses of the stove and the hot-beds, where your choice exotick plants are placed, and let them have free air, in proportion to the warmth of the season ; and such of your exotick plants as want shifting, should now be removed, and some of them placed in larger pots, giving them fresh earth, and then plunge them into the hot-bed again, observing to shade the glasses until they have taken fresh root.

TO W A R D the latter end of the month make cutings of Ficoidefes, Sedums, Cotyle-

166 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

dons, Cereuses, Euphorbiums, and other succulent plants, laying them in a dry shady place a week or more, according as they are more or less succulent, before they are planted, that the wounded part may be healed up, otherwise they are subject to rot; and when they are planted, they should be placed (such of them as are hardy) in a shady situation for a week or more; but those which are tender must be planted in pots, and plunged into a moderate hot-bed of tanners bark, observing to shade the glasses in the heat of the day, and refresh them with water as they may require; the hardy sorts may be planted in a bed of light earth, where if they are screened with mats they will freely take root.

CLEANSE the leaves of Aloes, and other tender exotick plants, from dust and filth, which they have contracted in the house during the winter, and cut off all decayed leaves of those plants, for now the wounds given to them will soon heal: this is also a proper time to cut off the heads of those sorts of Aloes, which grow with large stems, and seldom afford off-fets; so that there is no other method to propagate them, than by taking off their heads for planting, and thereby causing their stems to send forth a fresh shoot or two; but you must observe

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 167

serve to leave three or four good leaves upon the stem to draw the sap, otherwise the stem will decay without producing any new head; you must also keep them in the house, and not expose them abroad to the wet, until the wounds are perfectly healed; and if you plunge them into a moderate hot-bed, it will facilitate their shooting.

T U R N over your heaps of compost, to prevent weeds growing on them; and the oftener this is done, the better will they be mixed, and sweetened for use.

B R I N G out all your hardy exotick plants, such as Cistuses, Geraniums, Phylica, Celastrus, Sorrel tree, Amber tree, Anemonospermoses, Hermannias, Yellow Indian and Spanish Jasmynes, Polygala frutescens, Myrto-cistus, Fabagos, Rhufs, Oleanders, African Scabiouses, Phlomis, Spring Cyclamen, Lentiscuses, with several other sorts, which will now bear the open air; but you should observe to place them in a shady situation for a fortnight; for if they are immediately exposed to the full sun, it will change their leaves to a brown colour, and cause the plants to appear very unsightly.

T H O S E exotick plants which are to be continued longer in the house, must now be brought forward to the windows, that they

168 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

may have a great share of fresh air (especially if the season be warm); otherwise they will draw very weak, and change to a pale languid colour; and where the plants have been drawn too weak to bear the sun, if the glasses are shaded in the heat of the day, it will be better than to expose them too much to the sun until they are more hardened. You should also observe to cleanse their leaves and shoots from insects, which are very apt to infest them in the house, especially where the plants are much crowded; and if these are not washed off in time, they will greatly injure the plants, especially the Coffee tree, which is now flowering, and is frequently infested with these small vermin, which at first appear like dust upon the leaves, which should be immediately washed off, otherwise they will spread in a short time over most part of the plants.

If the season should prove cool, and the bark-bed, in which your Ananas are placed, should abate of its heat, you must stir it up again, and mix a little new bark with it, which will renew the heat, and be of great service in forwarding the fruit: it will also be of great service to the young Ananas plants, which are designed for fruiting the next year, for if the tan-beds are kept in a kindly heat all the summer,

May. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 169

mer, and a sufficient share of air admitted to the plants, they will become strong and healthy, so capable of producing large fruit. And at this time you should shift those plants which are to produce fruit the succeeding year, into larger pots, that their roots may have room to spread. But you must be careful not to put them in pots too large for this will prevent their growth.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

GERANIUMS of several sorts, Teucrium Bæticum with broad and narrow leaves, Anemones of several sorts, Othonna with cut hoary leaves, Canary Leucanthemum, Hermannia of several sorts, Elichrysus, Citysus Canariensis, Cistus Ladanifera, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Heliotropium Scorodoniæ folio, Polygala Africana, Arum Æthiopicum flore albo odorato, Convolvulus Canariensis, Ficoideæ of several sorts, Broad-leaved African Asphodel, African Tree Scabious, Shrubby African Sage with blue and iron coloured flowers, Ricinoides folio multido, Ricinoides Staphysagriæ folio, Lotus argentea Cretica, Turnera frutescens Ulmi folio,

170 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* May.

folio, Amaryllis, Crinum, Pancratiums, Jujubes, Myrtles, Royenia, Myrsine, Convolvulus erectus argenteus, Basella, Arabian Jasmine, Indian Fig, Indian flowering Reed, Bauhinias, Acacias, Apocynums, Phlomis, Melianthus, Watsonia, Ixia, Cunonia, Sisyrrinchium, Coral tree, Malpighia, Papaya, Cassia, Arum Caulescens, Rauwolfia, Purple American Helleborine, Kempferia, Waltheria, Cestrum, Lyciums of several sorts, Celastrus, Clusia, Cereus scandens, Antholyza, three sorts of Diosma, Euphorbiums, Hæmanthus Colchici foliis, Coffee tree, Melocactus Minor, Piercea, Dwarf Yellow Anthericum, Crasulaceas, Shrubby African Foxglove, Granadillas, Solanums of several sorts, two sorts of African Marigolds, Tree Candy Tuft, Artaphaxis, Evergreen climbing Birthwort, Tree Wormwood, Kiggelaria, Cotyledons, Fabagos, Pterocarya of three kinds, Lotus with black flowers, Climbing Arum with perforated leaves, Shrubby Peruvian Heliotrope, Passerina, Chironia, Shrubby African Lavatera, Blue Starwort of the Cape of Good Hope, Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Limes, and some sorts of Aloes.

JUNE.



J U N E.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

THE begining of this month you must transplant Cabbage and Savoy plants, which are to supply the kitchen in winter, either on an open spot of ground, or between rows of Beans Cauliflowers, &c. which will be taken off the ground in a short time, and then the new-planted plants will have room to grow; and being shaded by the other crops at first planting, they will take root sooner than if they were quite exposed to the sun, and by thus observing to put one crop to succeed another, a skilful person will produce more things from one acre of land, than some others can from two or three, which is what every

172 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

every person, who is acquainted with the London gardeners practice, must be convinced of.

THE Cauliflower plants which were sown the last month for winter use, will be fit to transplant towards the end of this month; when they should be pricked out into beds of rich earth, observing to shade them until they have taken root, and be sure to water them duly, in dry weather, otherwise they are apt to stint, and be infested with insects.

HOE and clean Carrots, Parsneps, Onions, Leeks, Beets, and all other late crops; for if the weeds are permitted to grow at this season, many of them will shed their seeds in a short time, and become troublesome hereafter, and the larger sorts will overbear the crops, and draw them up weak, to their great prejudice.

YOU may yet make slips or cuttings of Sage, Rosemary, Stoechas, Lavender, Hyssop, Winter Savory, and other aromatick plants; though it had been better if done earlier in the year, because this month often proves hot and dry, and the plants, having long and tender shoots, are in greater danger of miscarrying. These cuttings should have a small part of the former year's shoot to them, which is the surest method to have them succeed.

PLANT

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 173

PLANT out young plants of all sorts of sweet herbs which were sown in March; as Thyme, Hyssop, Sweet-marjoram, &c. and also Clary, Burnet, Sorrel, Marigolds, and many other sorts, observing to allow them room enough to spread, which will render them much stronger than those which remain in the seed-beds; but these must be duly watered, and the sweet herbs which are planted in beds, should be screened from the sun, until they have taken root.

CLEAR and hoe the ground whereon your earliest Cauliflowers grew, which will be all gone by the middle or latter end of this month. And if you have ridges of Cucumbers or Melons made between the rows of Cauliflowers, (as is the practice of the London gardeners) you should dig all the ground between the ridges, and lay out the Vines in regular order; this will not only loosen the ground for the roots of the plants, but also destroy the weeds, and render the surface of the ground wholsomer for the Vines to lie upon: but in doing of this, you should be very careful not to bruise or break the Vines, which would be very injurious to them; and (if possible) let it be done in moist weather.

N o w

174 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

N o w you should fill up the alleys between your last ridges of Melons : if this is done with loam and very rotten cow dung mixed, and the whole troden down very close, you need not give the plants any water afterward ; for if their roots have depth enough of strong land, they will produce a much greater crop of fruit, than when they are watered ; and the fruit will be much better flavoured.

S o w Turneps upon a moist spot of ground, and when there is a prospect of rain in a little time, which will bring up the plants in a few days ; for in dry weather the seeds will remain in the ground, and not vegetate ; besides, if the plants come up, and the weather be very hot and dry, the fly will take them and destroy them in a short time.

I N the begining of the month you may sow some Broccoli seed for the second crop, and Finnochia, to succeed that which was sown in the middle of the former month ; for in very hot weather this plant will not remain good above a fortnight, before it will run to seed ; so that if it be not often sown, there will be a want to supply the kitchen.

T R A N S P L A N T Celery into shallow trenches for blanching, allowing about four or five inches

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 175

inches space between each plant in the rows; and make the trenches three feet asunder, that there may be room enough between them to earth up the plants, when they are full grown.

P L A N T the last crop of Kidney Beans to succeed those which were planted in April; and sow Brown, Dutch, and common Cabbage Lettuces, for a late crop; and transplant such Lettuces as were sown in May, observing to place them in a shady situation, but not under trees, nor too near walls or other buildings, which will draw them up weak, and prevent their cabbaging.

T R A N S P L A N T Endive in an open moist spot of ground for blanching, allowing the plants a foot distance each way, that they may have room to spread; and sow some Endive seed for a latter crop.

C O N T I N U E to sow small sallot herbs every three or four days, such as Cresses, Mustard, Turnep, Rape, Radish, &c. for, at this season, they will soon grow too large for use.

Y O U must now thin the Finnochia plants, which were sown the former month, observing to allow them room enough to grow, otherwise they will draw up weak, and never swell at bottom; but the plants which are taken out should

176 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

should not be transplanted; for they rarely are good for any thing, being very subject to run to seed, before they arrive to any size.

THE Broccoli which was sown in May, should be now pricked out into beds at about three inches asunder, where they will grow strong, in order for planting out the next month; for where they are suffered to grow in the seed-bed too long, they draw up weak, and never produce so good heads, as those which are short and strong in their stems.

WEED and thin the plants in your Cucumber holes which were sown for pickling, observing to leave but four of the strongest and best situated plants in each hole; and at the same time earth up their shanks, which will greatly strengthen them; and give them some water to settle the earth about them.

PLANT out Cardoons for good, allowing each plant four feet of room, otherwise they cannot be earthed up so high as they will require when they are fully grown.

IN dry weather, gather seeds of all sorts, that are ripe, spreading them upon mats or cloth to dry, before they are rubed or beaten out of their husks or pods.

GATHER herbs for drying of such sorts as are now in flower, viz. Carduus Benedictus,

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 177

dictus, Mint, Lavender, Clary, Sage, Marigold flowers, and hang them up in a dry shady place, where they may dry leisurely, which will render them better for any purpose, than if they were dried in the sun; and this is the best season for distilling most sorts of herbs, which being now in flower, are much better than when they are suffered to stand longer.

YOUR Melon plants, that are growing upon beds, which are not deeply earthed, and are now setting of their fruit, should be shaded in the heat of the day with mats, if the weather be very warm, otherwise their fruit will drop; and you should be careful not to give them too much water, which is often injurious to them. The best method is, to water the alleys between the beds, which will soak through to the roots of the plants, and thereby supply them with moisture; and there will be no danger of the plants rotting by this method, as the water will not come near their stems.

GATHER up snails in the morning and evening, and after showers of rain, at which time they will come abroad from their holes, and places of harbour, so that they are easily destroyed.

178 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

THE weeds which now come up in most gardens are Wild Orach, Nightshade, Thorn-apple, Groundsel, Sow-thistles, Shepherd's-purse, Dandelion, Pimpernel, &c. which, if permitted to grow amongst crops, will soon get the better of them, and spoil whatever plants are near them.

You may now transplant Leeks out of the seed-beds into the places where they are to remain, observing to water them until they have taken root: this is often practised in small gardens, where an early crop of Beans or Cauliflowers has been produced on the same ground, before the Leeks are planted on it.

THE young Asparagus beds, which were planted in March, should be kept very clean from weeds, which, if permitted to grow, will soon weaken the roots, and sometimes destroy them. For wherever a large weed happens to stand near any of the Asparagus plants, their roots will insinuate themselves between those of the Asparagus; so that in pulling up the weeds, the roots of Asparagus are many times drawn out of the ground with them.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CAULIFLOWERS in plenty, Cabbages, young Carrots, Beans, Peas, Artichokes, Asparagus, Turneps,

June. *The Gardener's Kalendar.* 179

Turneps, Cucumbers, Melons, Kidney-beans, Cabbage Lettuces of various kinds; all sorts of young fallow herbs, as Chervil, Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, Corn fallow, Purslane, &c. some early Finnochia, large rooted Parsley, some Celery and Endive where they were sown early, with other kinds.

ALL sorts of sweet herbs, as Lavender, Thyme, Winter Savory, Hyssop, Marum, Matich, Stoechas, &c. as also Sage, Rosemary, Origanum, Mint, Baum, Pennyroyal, Parsley, Sorrel, Burnet, Bugloss, Borage for cool tankards, with many other kinds of medicinal or culinary plants.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

BEGIN to inoculate stone fruits toward the middle of the month, doing it in an evening, or in cloudy weather: the first sort which is fit to bud, is the Masculine Apricock, and so proceed to the other sorts, according to their times of ripening their fruits.

YOU must now look over your wall and espalier trees again, and rub off all foreright, ill-placed, or luxuriant branches, and train the others regularly at equal distances to the wall or espalier; but be not too officious with the

180 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

knife at this season, neither suffer any of the leaves to be pulled from the branches, unless they are distempered; for the pulling off the leaves, will expose the fruit too much to the sun in the day, and cold in the night, and thereby check their growth.

WHERE Peaches and Nectarines have been left too close together when they were thined, they should now be taken off, being careful not to suffer two or more fruits to grow nearer than five or six inches apart, which will greatly improve the fruit and strengthen the tree.

LOOK carefully after snails and other vermin which infest your choice fruit, and, if not timely prevented, will spoil it in a short time at this season.

IN dry weather water such trees as were transplanted the former season, observing to preserve mulch upon the surface of the ground about their roots, to prevent their being dried by the sun and wind; and fasten those shoots which have been produced, either to the wall or espalier, in the order they should grow; for if they are permitted to grow loose, they will be in danger of being broken by winds, &c.

OBSERVE to keep the ground about your trees clear from weeds, and all other plants; for if they are suffered to grow, they will exhaust

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 181

haust the nourishment of the ground, to the great injury of the trees; and the fruits which such trees produce, will not be near so large, nor well tasted as those which are produced from trees where no plants are suffered to grow about them: you should also gently stir up the earth of the borders about your fruit-trees with a dung fork, to loosen it where it has been troden down, by looking over and nailing of the trees: or if the soil is very strong, and subject to be bound, or grow hard, this will prepare the ground, to receive every shower of rain, and admit it to the roots of the trees; but this should be very carefully performed, so as not to fork too deep, to disturb the roots of the trees, or to expose them to the sun and air.

Y O U R Vines should now be looked over again, and the branches which are loose must be fastened to the wall; and all side shoots, or weak trailing branches, must be intirely taken off that the fruit may enjoy the benefit of the sun and air, which is absolutely necessary to promote their growth; but this is often neglected in many gardens, and the branches permitted to hang from the wall, and intangle with each other; so that when they are put in their proper position to the wall, their leaves

182 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

will often have their back parts upward, whereby the fruit will be retarded in its growth, until they have turned their surface again : and it is this neglect which occasions the late ripening or ill taste of the fruit, and also renders the wood soft and pithy, so that it seldom produces fruit the following year.

THE vineyard should also be thus managed at this season, fastening the shoots to the stakes in regular order, so that each may equally have the advantage of sun and air : and keep the ground perfectly clear from all other plants or weeds, which if permitted to grow, would greatly prejudice the Vines.

FRUITS in Prime, or yet lasting.

STRAWBERRIES of several sorts, Currants, Gooseberries ; and, from good aspected walls, Duke, Flanders-heart, White-heart and Black-heart Cherries : Masculine Apricock in a warm situation, toward the end of the month ; Green Gooseberries for tarts, in cold situations ; and, in the forcing-frame, Peaches, Nectarines, and Grapes ; and, in the hot-bed, Ananas or Pine Apples.

GOLDEN Russet, Pile's Russet, Stone Pippin, Deux Ans or John Apple, Oaken Pin, and
some

June. *The Gardener's Kalendar.* 183

some other Apples, where they are carefully preserved.

As also the black Pear of Worcester, Lord Cheyne's Green, and English Warden Pears.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

YOU must observe in this month (as was directed in the former) to keep the ground between your rows of trees in the nursery, entirely clear from weeds; for these are very injurious to the trees, and nothing can have a worse appearance, than a nursery over-grown with weeds; therefore this caution cannot be too often repeated: observe also to keep the feed-beds clear from weeds.

TOWARD the latter end of the month you must begin to bud Apricocks, and some early Peaches and Nectarines; but in this you must be guided by the condition of the trees from whence the cuttings are taken; for if the season has proved very dry, the buds will not easily part from the shoot, in which case it will be proper to defer this work a little longer.

OBSERVE to renew the mulch about your new-planted trees, where it is decayed; for at this season, if the weather proves dry the moisture of the earth will be exhaled, and the

184 *The Gardener's Kalendar.* June.

young fibres will be dried up, where this work is not carefully performed.

You may yet lay down the tender shoots of Virgins Bower, Granadillas, &c. observing to water the layers in dry weather, which will greatly promote their taking root. But these waterings should not be too often repeated, nor too much water given at each time, for that will rot the tender fibres as they are pushed out; therefore the best method is to lay some mulch on the surface of the ground after the layers are put down, to prevent the sun from drying it too fast, and then a little water will be sufficient, and the layers will more certainly take root. You may also make layers of several hardy exotick trees, which, if laid in the young wood, will many of them take root before winter; whereas when the older branches are laid down, they frequently fail, and when they do succeed, they will be much longer before they put out roots; so that whatever scarce plants you have a mind to increase, may be tried this way, since we are not assured what plants will take root with this management,

TRIM up your Evergreens, according to the uses for which they are designed; for if you suffer them to grow rude in summer, they cannot

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 185

cannot be so easily reduced afterwards; besides, the ruder they grow, the more naked they will be near their stems.

TOWARD the latter end of this month, you may prick out into beds the seedling plants of all sorts of Pines, which, if carefully shaded and watered, will soon take root at this season; and these plants will be stronger, and will be much better prepared to live through the following winter, than those which are left in the seed-beds, as their roots will be better fixed in the ground, and their stems will also be shorter. All the young seedling exotick trees and shrubs must be now taken great care of, to shade many of them from the sun in the middle of the day in very hot weather, otherwise they will be in danger by the earth being dried too fast about their roots; for as they are near the surface, the heat, in very warm seasons, will be too great for them where they are exposed to the full south sun; for when the ground is too soon dried, that will occasion often watering, whereby the tender fibres of the plants are frequently rotted; so that by shading them, much labour in watering them is saved, and the plants will thrive better.

Work

186 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

Work to be done in the PLEASURE or FLOWER-
GARDEN.

TRANSPLANT annual flowers out of the hot-bed or where they were raised, into the borders of the flower-garden; such as Capsicums, Balsamines, Convolvuluses, Love Apple Africans, French Marigolds, Amaranthuses, Indian Pinks, China Starwort, Marvel of Peru, Chrysanthemums, Tobacco, Palma Christi, Alkekengi, Sweet Reseda, or Mignonette d'Ægypt, Stramoniums, Yellow Sultan, Cardispermum, &c. observing to do it in a cloudy day, or in an evening; and give them some water to settle the earth to their roots.

You may now lay down your Carnations, Pinks, Double Sweet Williams, and such other fibrous-rooted plants, as are propagated by layers, being careful to water them as soon as it is done; but it must be given to them very gently, otherwise it will endanger the washing them out of the ground, or breaking them; and this watering should be frequently repeated, which will greatly facilitate their rooting.

THIS is a proper season for taking up and transplanting the root of Cyclamens, Fritillarias, Dens Canis, Saffron, Persian Iris, Snow-drops, Winter Aconite, Spring Crocuses, and such other

June: *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 187

other bulbous-rooted flowers, whose leaves are decayed, some of which do not succeed well, if their roots are kept any long time out of the ground; and the Guernsey and Belladonna Lilies may now be taken up, and either transplanted again immediately; or if they are to be sent to any distance, the roots may be wrapped up in wool, and this will preserve them for two months, or longer.

CUT off the stalks of such flowers as have done blowing, and are decaying; and tie up such flowers to sticks as are yet to blow, especially your tall autumnal plants, which are often broken down by the wind, if they are not timely supported with strong stakes.

TAKE up your Hyacinth roots out of the beds wherein they were laid the former month to ripen, and clear them from earth and filth, laying them upon a mat in a shady place to dry; after which they may be put into drawers or boxes, where they may enjoy the free air, without which they often grow mouldy and decay.

IT is now time to take up the roots of Tulips, Anemonies, Ranunculuses, Narcissus, Fritillarias, Crown Imperials, Tulips, and other bulbous and tuberosc-rooted flowers, whose leaves are decayed, and spread them upon mats
in

188 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

in a shady place to dry ; then clean them from filth, and put them up in boxes or bags until the season for planting them, being careful to put them out of the reach of rats and mice, otherwise they will eat them up, but especially the Tulip roots.

YOUR Carnations, which begin to break their pods, should be opened in two or three different parts, at equal distances, that their flowers may expand equally on every side, otherwise they will throw their leaves out on one side of the pods : you must also observe to cover them with glasses soon after their pods are open, to screen them from moisture ; and, in the heat of the day, the glasses must be covered with paper, or Cabbage leaves, to screen the flowers from the heat of the sun, both which are very injurious to them ; but some very curious persons make their covers for these flowers, with oiled paper, which is much better than glass, because the heat is not so great through them, so the flowers will not be in danger of scorching ; look carefully after earwigs and ants ; for if these can come at the flowers, they will destroy them in a short time, by eating the sweet ends of the petals next the nectarium, so that the leaves will fall out of the pods.

TRANS-

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 189

TRANSPLANT such sorts of perennial or biennial fibrous-rooted plants as were sown the two former months, into nursery-beds, where they should be allowed room enough to grow till autumn, which is the proper season for placing them in the borders of the flower-garden to remain: of these kinds are French Honey-suckles, Seedling Pinks, Sweet Williams, Stock-gilliflowers, Columbines, Dames-gilliflowers, Canterbury Bells, Hollyhocks, Scabiouses, Wall-flowers, Carnations, Fox-gloves, Campanulas, &c. all of which must be raised in the flower-nursery the first season, and in the autumn transplanted into the flower-garden to blow.

You may now inoculate some of the more curious sorts of Roses, which do not send forth suckers so as to be increased thereby: the best stocks for budding them upon, are the Francfort and Damask Roses, which are the freest shooters. You should now inoculate Jasmines, of all the kinds you want to increase; and you may yet also inarch Jasmines of all the kinds you want to increase; you may yet also inarch Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Pomgranates, &c.

PLANT cuttings of Lychnideas, Double Sweet Williams, Double Scarlet Lychnises, Pinks,

190 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

Pinks, late flowering Asters, and such other fibrous-rooted plants as you want to increase; which, if planted in a bed of light rich earth, shaded from the sun and duly watered, will take root very well.

Plants now in Flower.

LARKSPUR, White Lily, Orange Lily, Red Day Lily, Everlasting Pea, sweet-scented Pea, Tangier Pea, Canada Golden-rod, Broad-leaved upright Dogbane, Apocynum Liliiconvallii flore, Yellow and Blue Aconite, Horned Poppies of several sorts, Capnoides; White, Black, and Yellow Swallow-wort; Veronicas, Blattarias, Scarlet Lychnis, Rose Campion, Pinks, Double and Single Virgins Bower, Flammula Jovis, Hyssop, Claries, Oriental Bugloss, Double Ptarmica, Sweet Sultan, Xeranthemums, Coronilla herbacea flore vario, Jaceas, Santolinas, Acanthus, Snapdragons, Linarias, Tree Primrose, Willow-weed or French Willow, Yellow Loosestrife, White Loosestrife, Valerianella Cornucopoides, two sorts of African Marigold, Hieraciums, Chrysanthemums, Lychnises, Nigella of two sorts, Peach-leaved Bell-flower, Lychnidea of three sorts, Gentianella, White Wall-flower with double and single flowers, White and Red French Honey-suckles,

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 191

fuckles, Lobel's Catchfly, Venus Navelwort, Flos Adonis, Venus Looking-glass, Double and Single Sweet Williams, Double Catchfly, Bulbous fiery Lily, Martagons of several sorts, Ornithogalums, Bulbous Irises, Bloody Cranesbill; Red, White, and Garden Valerian; Greek Valerian with blue and white flowers, Oriental Ox-eye with yellow and white flowers, Bachelors Button with double and single flowers, Double Ragged Robbin, Savoy and Tradescant's Spiderworts, Poppies of various kinds, Columbines of various colours, Spanish and Portugal Figwort, Indian Scabious, several sorts of Thrift, Candy Tuft, Dwarf Lychnis, Dwarf Annual Stock, Fox-gloves, Cornflags two or three sorts, White Hellebore, Yellow Perennial and Tangier Fumitaries, Sea Ragwort, Africans, Female Balfamine, Periwinkles, Fraxinella with purple and white flowers, Great Blue and White Wolfsbane, Chalcedonia Iris, Helianthemums, Sea Lavenders, Smilax, Asphodels, Eupatoriums, Cyanuses of several sorts, Birthwort with long and round roots, St. Peters-wort, Bean-caper, Double Camomile, Capficum, Greater Centaury, Dittany of Crete, Dragon, Fennel-Giant, Lavatera, Lavender, Sunflower of several kinds, Poley-mountain, Lupines, Water Lily, Cut-leaved

192 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

leaved Lavender, Moth-mullein, Eastern Cassida with yellow flowers, Alpine Cassida with large blue flowers, Christophoriana Virginiana, Great yellow Gentian, Ruyschiana of two sorts, Sweet Reseda, Phlomis, Betony of several sorts, Globe Thistle, Cirsiums, Trachelium, Pyramidal Campanula, Cerinthe or Honeywort, Purple Ragwort, Squill, Oriental Mallow, Perennial Yellow Anonis, Sea Holly, Alcea, Ketmia Vesicaria of three sorts, Sea Daffodil, Vulneraria flore Coccineo, with some others of less note.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

BLADDER Sena, Pomgranate with double and single flowers, Spanish Broom, Broad-leaved Yellow Jasmine, White Jasmine, Roses of various sorts, Tamarisk, Virginian Sumach, Dorycnium, Althæa frutescens Bryoniae folio, Althæa frutescens flore parvo, Oleaster, Ptelea, Nettle tree, Upright Sweet Canada Raspberry, Lime tree, Shrub Cinquefoil, Tree German-der ; Late Red, Dutch, Evergreen, and Long-blowing Honeyfuckles ; Spiræa Salicis folio, Spiræa Hyperici folio, Shrubby St. John's-wort, Canary Hypericum, Catesby's Climber or Carolina Kidney Bean tree, Perennial Shrubby Lamium or Base Horehound, Syringa, Cytisus

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 193

tifus Lunatus, Mallow tree, three or four sorts of American Hawthorns, two sorts of Viburnums, Eastern Colutea, Passion-flower, three sorts of Virgins Bower, Spindle tree, American Dogwood, Persimon, Fringe or Snow-drop tree, Toxicodendron, Cistuses of several sorts, Phlomis, Virginia Acacia, Catalpa, Bastard Indico, Caper-bush, Coccoygria, Tulip-tree, Clethra, Itea, Red and White Spiræa, Celastrus, Honey Locust, Small Magnolia, Cytisus Glaber nigricans, Hairy Cytisus, Dier-villa, Scorpion Senna, Portugal Laurel, Double Sweet-briar, Periploca, Genista of two or three sorts, Wormwood tree, Colutea Æthiopica, Pistachia nut, American Dogwood, Tartarian Dogwood, Scarlet-flowering Horse Chestnut, and some others of less note.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

MULLEIN, Speedwell, Figwort, Water Betony, Ros Solis or Sun-dew, Sanicle, Self-heal, Penny-royal, Red Poppy flowers, Pellitory, Cat-mint, Water Lily, Spear-mint, Pepper-mint, Yarrow or Milfoil, Scabious, Devils-bit, Feverfew, Melilot, Burnet, Mallow, Black and White Horehound, Burnet Saxifrage, Sage of
O Virtue,

194 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

Virtue, Red Sage, Dittander or Pepperwort, Mountain Flax, Yellow Loofestriſe, Tanſy, Privet flowers, Stone-crop, Hares-foot Trefoil, St. John's-wort, Hyſſop, Rupture-wort, Aliſanders, Aſh leaves, Herb Robert, Muſk Cranes-bill, Doves-foot Cranes-bill, Broom, Hedge Muſtard, Hemp Agrimony, Strawberry fruit, Broad and Narrow-leaved Plantain, Dragons, Tarragon, Lavender Cotton, Ladies Bedſtraw, Common Wormwood, Roman Wormwood, Lavender-ſpike, Lime tree flowers Bears-breech, Comfrey, Spinach, Maudlin, Mother of Thyme, Houſleek, Agrimony, Hemlock, Water Hemlock, Vervain-mallow, Thyme, Maſh-mallow, Succory, Ladies-Mantle, Pimpernel, Dwarf Elder, Reſtharrow, Blue-bottles, Roſemary, Marigolds, Silverweed or Wild Tanſy, Germander, Orpine, Cyclamen root, Fox-glove, Mugwort, Borage, Bugloſs, Sowthiſtle, Garden Orach, Stinking Orach, Shepherds-purſe, Honeyſuckle, Betony, Carduus Benedictus, Calamint, Avens, Knotgrafs, Camomile, Hounds-tongue, Eye-bright, Raspberry fruit, Damask Roſe, White Roſe, Red Roſe flowers, Elder flowers, Stœchas or French Lavender, and Brooklime.

Work

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE,
GARDEN, and STOVE.*

YOUR Orange trees, being now in flower, should be constantly supplied with water in dry weather, to encourage them to set their fruit; and the earth on the surface of their tubs and pots should be stired, and some rotten neats dung laid thereon, raising it round the outside of the tubs or pots, so as to make an hollow to contain the water; but you should never lay any new dung upon the pots, nor put any sheep or deer dung into the water to enrich it, as is by too many persons practised, to the great prejudice of their trees; for these strongly impregnated waters, instead of affording nourishment to the trees, cause their leaves to change to a pale yellow colour, and the trees are apt to flower out of the proper season, which renders them weak, and many times destroys them in two or three years time. The best water for these trees is such as is taken from rivers, or ponds, where it is fully exposed to the sun and air; so that if you have no other than spring or well water, it should always be exposed to the sun and air two or three days before it is used. You must also gather off

196 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

the flowers as they blow, leaving but a few upon each tree for fruit, and those only upon the strongest branches, and where they are best situated to stand.

PLANT cutings of Myrtles in a bed of light rich earth, observing to water and shade them until they have taken root; and now you may plant cutings of Geraniums, Cytisuses, Leonuruses, Dorias, Elichrysums, Hermannias, African Sages, Othonna, African Marigolds, Lantanas, Halleria, African Starwort, Cistuses, Fabagos, Lotuses, Arctotis, Conyzas, African Sumachs, and many other exotick plants, which are shrubby; but in choosing of the cutings, take such as have no flowers on them, and those which have strength, and not such as have been drawn weak by standing too long in the green-house; treating them in the manner directed under their several heads in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY.

YOU may now shift any of your green-house plants into larger pots, observing to pare off all the mouldy and decayed roots, which generally grow round next the sides of the pots; and take out as much of the old earth from the ball as you can conveniently, without leaving their roots too bare. When they are new planted, they should be placed in a shady situation,

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 197

ation, and where they may be defended from strong winds; it will also be proper to support them by driving stakes into the ground at proper distances, to which a rail should be fastened at a convenient height from the ground, and the stems of the plants fastened to the rail, to prevent the wind from displacing the plants until they have taken new root, after which they may be removed to the places where they are to remain during the summer season.

TAKE off cuttings from the several kinds of Cereuses, Sedums, Euphorbiums, Ficoide-ses, Cotyledons, Indian Fig, Crassulas, Klenias, and other succulent plants, laying them in a shady part of the stove for about a fortnight, that their wounded parts may heal over before they are planted, otherwise they will be in danger of rotting.

STIR up the bark in those hot-beds which have been long made, and, where it is wanted, add some new bark to them, which will renew their heat, and plunge the pots down again immediately; this should be done in soft warm weather, when there is little wind, lest, by exposing the plants in cold weather to the open air, they should suffer; or if the weather is bad, the plants should be carried into the stove while this is doing, for tender plants

198 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* June.

will not bear the open air, when the wind is strong.

IN fine weather you should give air freely to your most tender exotick plants; but it will be proper to shade the glasses of the stove in the middle of the day, when the sun is very hot; especially in small stoves, where the plants are near the glasses; for in large stoves, where the plants have room, they will not require to be shaded, unless at such times when they are new-poted, till they have taken fresh root.

TRANSPLANT such seedling exotick plants as were raised in the spring, into larger pots; and such of them as are very tender, should be plunged into a fresh hot-bed, to promote their growth; but those which are hardy, will only require to be sheltered until they have taken root, after which time, they may be removed to the places where they are to remain the summer season.

You may now take up the roots of the Canary Campanula, and all the bulbous roots which come from the Cape of Good Hope, as the Hæmanthus, African Cornflag, Blue tube-rose-rooted Hyacinth, Lilies, Sisyrrinchiums, Squills, Persian Cyclamen, Cunonia, Watsonia, Antholyza, Ixia, Ornithogalums, and several other sorts whose leaves are intirely decayed;

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 199

at this time they should be parted and planted into pots of fresh earth immediately, placing them where they may have the morning sun till eleven o'clock, and give them now-and-then a little water in very dry weather; but do it sparingly, until they push forth new leaves: for much water at this season, when the roots are almost inactive, will rot them.

THIS is also a proper season for transplanting the roots of the Guernsey and Belladonna Lilies, their leaves being intirely decayed; and at this time fresh roots should be procured from abroad; for those which are taken up afterwards, when they have put out new roots, seldom thrive so well. The roots of the former should be planted in pots filled with the following compost, or in a warm border where they can be screened with mats in hard frosts to preserve their leaves; viz. one third part fresh earth from a pasture, a third part of sea sand, and a third part of lime rubbish. These should be well mixed, and the bottoms of the pots covered with stones, to make an open passage for the water to drain off; then fill the pots with the compost, and place the roots therein, and set the pots in a situation where they may enjoy the morning sun, but give them but little water until they begin to push

out their roots; the second sort which is pretty hardy, will thrive best if the roots are planted in warm borders, but if the ground is moist, the borders should be raised so high, as that the wet may not come near the roots, and some rubbish laid at the bottom to drain off the moisture.

YOUR Tuberoses, which were planted early, will now begin to flower, when those which were planted upon the hot-bed may be removed into pots (preserving as much earth as possible to their roots) and placed where they are designed to remain for flowering, observing to refresh them often with water; and those which were planted later, in order to succeed those first planted, must have as much free air as possible, and be frequently watered; which will render them strong, and cause them to produce a greater quantity of flowers.

THE Ananas must now be frequently refreshed with water, but this should not be given them in too great plenty, and in hot weather they should have much free air; for if the glasses are kept too close down, their leaves will be scorched, to the great prejudice of the plants, and the fruit will be less delicate; but if they have too much water, and the glasses left open in the day-time (as some have injudiciously done),

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 201

done), the plants will suffer as much that way; for, upon proportioning the quantity of air, and water equally, depends the whole success.

IN the middle of this month you may begin to take out of the stove some of the hardier sorts of Aloes, and other succulent plants, placing them at first in the green-house, where they may have a large share of air to harden them for a few days, then they may be placed abroad in a shady situation, where snails and other vermin are not in too great plenty; for when they are exposed to the violence of the sun as soon as they are taken out of the house, they change colour and appear unsightly; so they should be inured to it by degrees: but if snails or slugs can come to them, they will gnaw their leaves, and greatly deface them. After the stove is thined of some of these hardier sorts, the other more tender plants should be placed at a greater distance on the stands, and cleaned from filth, by which they will enjoy more air, and be rendered stronger, more vigorous, and be better prepared to place abroad the beginning of the next month.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE,
GARDEN, and STOVE.*

ORANGES, Lemons, Limes, Citrons, and Shaddocks, Myrtles, Olives, Cistus Halimi folio, Male Cistus of several sorts, Cistus Ledon, Pforalea, Apocynum Africanum erectum Salicis folio flore albo, Anemonospermofes several sorts, Elichrysum flore aureo, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Ketmia Papayæ folio, Cotton plant, Ficoides several kinds, Indian Yellow Jasmine, Sedums several sorts, Colutea Æthiopica, Barbæ Jovis folio, Alcea Africana frutescens flore rubro, Barba Jovis or Silver-bush, Dwarf American Campanula, African Tree Scabious, Bassella, Melianthus two sorts, Mimosa, White Spanish Broom, Cotyledons, Ricinoides folio multifido, Ricinoides Staphysagriæ folio, Indian Arrow root, Double Indian Nasturtium, Coffee tree, Shrubby African Polygala, Amomum Plinii, African Sages of two or three sorts, Azorian Jasmine, Aloes of several sorts, Dwarf Pomgranate, Indian flowering Reed, Cytisus Lunatus, Phlomis three or four sorts, Cytisus Canariensis, Geraniums of several sorts, several sorts of Passion flower, Plumeria, Cassias Oleanders, Teucrium Bæticum, Lotus argentea Cretica,

June. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 203

Cretica, Lotus Hæmorrhoidalis major & minor, Coral tree, Bean-caper, Herman-nias, Lentiscus, Euphorbiums, Pancrarium, Abutilons, Papaws, Cereuses, Lantanas, Cro-tolarias, Anonises, Double Thorn Apple with purple and white flowers, Lotus with black flowers, Diosma of three sorts, Helio-tropiums, Lyciums, Celastrus, Martinia of three kinds, Canary Lavender, Crinum, Sau-rurus, Tabernemontana, Waltheria, Tourne-fortia, Brunfelsia, Vinca from the island of Bourbon, Solanums, Alkekengi of several sorts, Arums, Hæmanthus Cholchici foliis, Anthericums, Piercea, Melon Thistle, Gef-neria, Shrubby Canary Foxglove, Adhatoda of two sorts, Kiggelaria, Grewia, Asclepias Africana, Clusia, Passerina, Phyllanthus, Ti-thymalus, Phytolacca of three sorts, Chironia, Ascyron Balearicum, Arabian Jasmine, Shrub-by Convolvuluses, African Shrubby Lavatera, Rauwolfia, Bacteria, Wormwood tree, African Sumachs, Borbonia, Laurus Regia, Sorrel tree, Crassula, Palm tree, Malpighias, Tur-nera, Hedyfarums, Bupleurum arborescens, Brunfelsia, with some others.

JULY.



J U L Y.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

THE begining of this month sow the last crop of Kidney Beans, in a situation where they may be defended from morning frosts in autumn; for this crop will continue bearing till Michaelmas, provided they are not injured by frost. If the ground is very dry when these are planted, it will be proper to soak the Beans six or eight hours in water before they are planted, which will greatly facilitate their growth: the best sort for this planting is the Scarlet-flowering Kidney Bean, which will continue bearing until the frost destroys the plants.

CLEANSE the ground where your first crop of Cauliflowers grew, from the leaves of the Cauliflowers which may have scattered,
and

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 205

and any other rubbish or weeds which may be there ; and if you have Cucumbers for picklers, between the wide rows (as is the common practice of the London gardeners), you must draw up the earth round the holes, in which the plants grow, with a hoe, forming it in a hollow like a basin, to contain the water given them ; and if there are Cabbages for winter use, in the narrow rows (which is also by the same gardeners practised), they should have earth drawn to their stems, and the whole ground intirely cleared from weeds.

ABOUT the end of this month you should sow Spinach for winter use, as also Coleworts, Carrots, and Onions, to stand the winter for spring use ; and Turneps for the last crop, should now be sown in the open field for the spring. Transplant Savoy, Broccoli, and Cabbages for spring use, and plant out Cauliflowers for the autumn crop.

PLANT Celery into drills for blanching (if it be of the Italian sort ; but if it be the Turnep-rooted sort, it is better to plant it on level ground) ; and plant out Endive for blanching. Continue sowing all sorts of small sallet herbs, which, at this season, soon grow too large for use.

IN dry weather, observe to water all such plants as have been lately transplanted, and be sure always to do this in an evening; for one watering at that time is of more service than three at any other time of the day, the moisture having time to penetrate the ground (and reach to the extreme fibres of the root by which they receive their nourishment), before the sun appears to exhale it; whereas when it is given in the morning, the sun coming on soon after, the moisture is drawn up before it reaches the root; and where there is convenience to lay mulch upon the surface of the ground about the roots of plants, that will prevent the sun from exhaling the moisture, so that one watering will be of more service than three or four, where that is wanting.

You must now diligently destroy the weeds in every part of the garden, which if suffered to remain, will soon perfect their seeds; and when these are permitted to scatter upon the ground, they will fill it with seeds for a seven years crop, to the no small trouble of the gardener, as also to the great injury of the crops. Observe also to clear your dunghills from weeds, for these are too often neglected; and if the weeds are permitted to seed there, they will be brought into the garden, and be as trouble-

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 207

troublesome as if they had scattered in it, which is what few people regard, though it is a thing of great moment; as is also the keeping the borders round the outside of the garden free from weeds, especially those weeds which have downy seeds; for these will be waisted by the winds into the garden, and produce a plentiful crop.

GATHER seeds of Spinach, Corn sallet, Welch Onion, Cress, and of all other sorts that are ripe, cutting off their stalks, and spreading them upon mats or cloths in a dry airy place that they may harden; and then rub or beat them out of their husks or pods, and put them up in a place where vermin cannot come to them to destroy them.

PULL up Onions, Garlick, Rocamboles, Eschalots, &c. when their leaves begin to wither; and spread them thin in a dry airy place, that they may be perfectly dry before they are laid up for winter use.

CONTINUE to earth up your first crop of Celery, which was planted in the drills the former months, as it advances in height; but be careful not to draw the earth up into the heart or middle of the plants, for that will stop their growth, and rot them. Tie up the Endive, which is full grown, to blanch it,
ob-

observing always to do this work in dry weather; for if the leaves are moist when they are tied, they will rot in the middle.

PULL up the stalks of Beans, Cabbages, &c. and the haulm of Peas, and other leguminous plants which have done bearing, that the ground may be clear, for if these are permitted to remain, they will harbour vermin, to the prejudice of your adjoining crops.

YOUR Melons, which now begin to ripen, should have no water given them, because that will render them watery and ill-tasted, though persons who are fond of very large fruit, find their account in supplying the plants constantly with water in great plenty, especially in hot weather; but these persons do not regard the quality of their fruit so much as the size of them; for which reason, the market gardeners always prefer the hard sorts of Melons, which produce the large fruit, though they are not better flavoured than Pumpkins.

IN this month you may repair your young Asparagus beds which were planted the last spring, by planting fresh plants where any of them have failed; but this should be done in moist weather. The young plants which are planted at this season will be well rooted

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 209

fore winter, and put out some shoots in the autumn.

THE Cucumbers which were brought up under hand-glasses, being now in full bearing, must be duly watered in dry weather, otherwise they will be exhausted in a short time, and decay.

TRANSPLANT the Celery into beds, which was sown in May, that the plants may acquire strength before they are planted into drills: and transplant some Endive, to succeed that which was planted the former month.

Now you may sow the Turnep-rooted Radish, which will be in great perfection for the table in October, and continue good until the hard frost destroys them: and where the common sort of Radish is required for the table in autumn, if some seeds are sown on moist ground the latter end of this month, they will be fit to draw in a month or five weeks after, and will continue good a month longer.

CLEAR the Artichokes, which were planted the last spring, from weeds, and all other crops which were sown between them, that they may have full liberty to spread; for if they are crouded with any other plants at this season, they will produce small fruit; and those

210 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

Artichokes which are now cut for use from the old stocks, should have their stems broken down close to the surface of the ground, that the roots may not be injured by leaving the bottom of the stems upon them, as is too often practised by unskilful gardeners.

You may now sow some Broccoli seed for the last crop, which will be fit for use in April, after the heads of all the former crops are gone, when there are only the side shoots of them remaining; and these late sown plants will produce much more tender heads than any of the former sowings, though not so large.

Sow some Endive for the last crop, about the middle of this month, to succeed that which was sown the former month, which will not continue fit for use much longer than October; whereas the plants of this sowing will continue until April, if they are not destroyed by severe frost.

WHERE small sallet herbs are required, they should now be sown on north borders, and these sowings repeated every three or four days; for at this season they will soon grow too large for use.

THE Cos, Cilicia, and other sorts of Lettuce, which were sown the last month, must now be transplanted out: these, if the autumn

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 211

tumn proves favourable, will be fit for use in September.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CAULIFLOWERS, Artichokes, Cabbages, Carrots, Beans, Peas, Kidney Beans, Turneps, Lettuce, Cucumbers, Melons, and all other sorts of small sallet, as Radish, Rape, Mustard, Cresses, Purslane, and, from the early sowing, Celery and Endive; Fenchia, Onions, Garlic, Rocambole, Parsley, Sorrel, Chervil, Scorzoneria, and Salsify of the first sowing, Beets, Horse-radish, some early planted Potatoes; on moist ground Radishes and Spinach, Marigolds, Tomatos for soups, where they have been raised early, and are growing in warm situations, Burnet, Borage, Bugloss, Mint, Balm, Sage, Thyme, Sweet-marjoram, Basil, with some other aromatick plants and herbs for soups.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN *and*
VINEYARD.

THE begining of this month you must look carefully over your wall and espalier trees, rubbing off all foreright shoots that are produced;

212 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

duced; and train all such regular shoots as are designed to remain close to the wall or espalier, in their due position; whereby the fruit will have the advantage of sun and air to ripen them, and give them their proper flavour. If this be rightly executed, there will be no occasion to divest the branches of their leaves, as is by some unskilful persons practised, to the great prejudice both of their fruit and trees: nor can I here forbear repeating what I have elsewhere often taken notice of, *viz.* not to suffer fruit trees to remain neglected till this season (as is too often practised), and then to summer-prune them (as it is commonly called), in the doing of which, the gardeners cut off all the luxuriant branches, and shorten those designed to remain, and then nail them close to the wall, so that from being (before this dressing) in a very rude disorderly way, they are reduced into an exact order at once; but hereby the fruit, which was greatly shaded by the luxuriant growth of the branches, is suddenly exposed to the sun and air, which hardens their outward skins, and retards their growth; whereas, if the shoots had been constantly trained to the wall or espalier, as they were produced, the fruit would have continually been under an
equal

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 213

equal coverture of leaves, and so consequently less liable to suffer from any extremes of weather; whereby they would also be considerably forwarded in their growth, than when they are managed in the other way; so that as this practice is too generally followed, I think it cannot be too much exposed, and the proper directions cannot be too often inculcated.

IN the begining of this month you must bud all sorts of fruits, which were not done the preceding month, observing always to do it in an evening or in cloudy weather.

HOE and clean your ground about your espalier trees from weeds, as also the borders near your wall-fruit trees; for if they are permitted to grow at this season, they will rob the trees of their nourishment; and cut off all suckers which arise from the roots of the trees, as they are produced; for these injure them much, if they are suffered to remain.

LOOK carefully after snails in the mornings and evenings, but especially after a shower of rain, when they will be tempted to come abroad, and may be at that time easily taken; for these vermin do great mischief to stone fruit.

214 *The Gardener's Kalendar.* July.

PLACE glass phials filled with honey-water in different parts of your walls, to destroy wasps and pismires, which would infest your choice fruit; but are by the sweetness of the water tempted into the phials, and frequently drowned; but these should be hung before the fruit begins to ripen, for then they will be much sooner tempted to the water, than after they have tasted the fruit: where there are a sufficient number of these glasses placed against the walls in time, the fruit may be preserved from these vermin.

THE vineyard must now be carefully looked over, and all dangling shoots and wild wood must be displaced, that the fruit may not be too much covered with leaves; but by no means divest any of the fruit branches of their leaves (as some unskilful persons too often practise); for these are absolutely necessary to the growth of the fruit; nor will there be any occasion for this practice, where the shoots are duly placed, and the luxuriant shoots constantly rubbed off as they are produced. Where this method is begun early in the season, and constantly pursued, as there may be occasion, the fruit will be forwarded above three weeks (as I have experienced), and will be much fairer and better tasted, than in the contrary manage-

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 215

management; for when the shoots of the Vines are permitted to hang loose from the walls or stakes, their leaves will take a contrary direction, which, upon having their shoots afterwards fastened up in their right position will have their back-side upwards: and until these leaves are turned into their proper position, the fruit will be at a stand, and make no progress in their growth, which is commonly eight or ten days in effecting; so that the fruit loses eight or ten days in the principal season of its growth, which, together with being too much shaded in the former months, is scarcely ever to be retrieved in this climate.

You must also keep the ground constantly cleared from weeds and other plants between the rows of Vines, which is also of great consequence in this country; for where there are other plants suffered to grow they not only rob the roots of the Vines of their nourishment, but also, by perspiring, cause a damp in the air about the Vines, and prevent the sun and wind from drying the surface of the ground; whereby the fruit is filled with crude nourishment, and rendered less delicate.

Look carefully over your fruit trees, which have been buded or grafted the former sea-

216 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

son, and observe that no shoots from the stocks remain, for these will rob the buds or grafts of their nourishment.

WHERE any of your fruit trees against the walls or espaliers, are not of the sorts which you desire, they should now have buds of those kinds put into their tender shoots; if there are several buds put into different parts of each tree, when they succeed, the walls or espaliers will be soon covered by them again, with the desired kinds, so that by this method the trees will be in full bearing in three years, whereas when the trees are destroyed, and new trees planted in their places, they will be seven or eight years before they arrive to that perfection.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; the Primitive, Robine, Petit Muscat, Muscadelle-rouges, Cuiffe-Madame, Petit Blanquette, Jargonelle, Green Chiffel, Orange Musque, with some others; and where they have been well preserved, the Black Pear of Worcester, and Lord Cheyne's Green Pear, are yet in being.

APPLES; Codling, Margaret Apple, White Juneating, Stubbard's Apple, Summer Costing, Summer Pearmain, Pomme de Rambour; and
still

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 217

still continue the Deux Ans or John Apple, the Stone Pepin, and Oaken Pin of the former year.

CHERRIES; Kentish, Duke, Gascoign's Heart, Carnation, Lukeward, Ox-heart, Amber-heart, Coroon, Amber, White Spanish, and Black Cherries.

PEACHES; Brown and White Nutmeg, and Anne Peach.

NECTARINE; Fairchild's early Nutmeg.

PLUMS; Jaun Hative, Morocco, Orleans, Blue Primordian, Violet Royal.

APRICOCKS; the Orange, Roman, Breda, Algier and Turkey.

As also Gooseberries, Raspberries, Currants; and, in cold situations, the White, Green, and Chili Strawberries; and, in the stove, the Ananas or Pine Apple.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

CONTINUE to bud Apricocks, Peaches, Nectarines, Cherries, Plums, Pears, &c. This should, if possible, be performed in a cloudy day, or in a morning or evening, when the sun is not violent, because the cuttings are very apt to shrink in very hot sun-shine, which causes the bud to adhere too closely to the wood, unless they are put in water, which is what many

218 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

people practise ; but this is not so proper ; for those buds, which are covered with water, will be so much saturated with moisture, as to prevent their uniting with the stock, so that they often miscarry : therefore, when it is necessary to put them into water, there should be only the lower part of the cuttings immersed about an inch ; for the upper part will attract the water better than if the cuttings are intirely covered.

IN about three weeks after the stocks are budded, you should look over them to loosen the bandage, otherwise the buds will be pinched and greatly injured if not destroyed.

OBSERVE to keep your nursery clean from weeds at this season, for now the weeds will soon ripen their seeds, if they are permitted to remain, which will fill the ground so as not to be cleared again for years.

YOU must continue to train your evergreen trees for the purposes they are designed : and where any of your forest trees shoot too vigorously near their roots, those branches may be pruned off to encourage their heads.

KEEP your beds wherein your young stocks and trees were sown in the spring, clear from weeds ; and in very dry weather supply them with

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 219

with water, which will greatly promote their growth.

ABOUT the middle of this month, if the season proves moist, you may safely transplant many sorts of evergreen trees; as you may also transplant young seedling Pines and Firs from the pots or cases in which they were sown; but the beds where they are planted, should be shaded with mats every day until they have taken root; where this is observed, the plants will soon be rooted, and make a great progress, so that it is by much the surest season for this work: but this is chiefly to be understood of young seedling plants, and where they are not to be removed to any great distance; for their roots are soon dried, when they are taken out of the ground at this season; therefore they should be planted again immediately, otherwise the fibres of their roots will dry, whereby they will suffer greatly: therefore, when these plants are carried to any little distant place, their roots should be placed in shallow pans of water, or covered with wet moss during the time they are out of the ground.

Work

*Work to be done in the PLEASURE-GARDEN,
and WILDERNESS.*

TAKE up the bulbs of such late flowers as were not fit the last month; such as Ornithogalums, Red Lilies, Martagons, and some other sorts; and transplant the roots of Persian and Bulbous Irises; as also Fritillarias, Hyacinth of Peru, Dens Canis, Narcissuses, and such other bulbous and tuberosc-rooted flowers which will not endure to be kept long above ground; and this being the season when they are not in action, is the most proper time for transplanting them, before they put forth new fibres, after which time it will not be proper to remove them.

CONTINUE to make layers of Pinks, Carnations, Sweet Williams, &c. where it was not done the former month; but the sooner this is done the better, provided the shoots are strong enough to lay down.

TRANSPLANT such biennial or perennial fibrous-rooted flowers as were sown late in the spring, such as Pinks, Carnations, Stock-gilliflowers, Wall-flowers, Hollyhocks, French Honeysuckles, Canterbury Bells, Scabiouses, Pyramidal Bell flower, Scarlet Lychnis, Rose
Campion,

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 221

Campion, Fox-gloves, Tree Primrose, Greek Valerian, Columbines, Polyanthus, and some others, which should be planted in nursery-beds, where they may have room to grow until Michaelmas, when they should be transplanted into the borders of the flower-garden.

CLEAN your borders diligently from weeds, but especially such sorts as soon shed their seeds; for if they are permitted to stand until their seeds are scattered, it will be a constant trouble for several years to extirpate them.

GATHER the seeds of all sorts of flowers as they ripen, drying them in the shade, and preserve them in their husks or pods until the season for sowing them; but you should let them be well dried before they are put up, otherwise they will grow mouldy and decay.

CUT down the stalks of such flowers as begin to wither and decay, and tie up all tall-growing plants, which are yet to flower, lest the winds blow them down and break them.

INOCULATE Roses, Jasmines, and other sorts of curious flowering shrubs and trees, this month being the principal season for this work.

CUT and trim hedges, clip box edgings, mow grass-plats, and keep the walks constantly rolled; and the weeds should be carefully
taken

222 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

taken out of them; for if they are suffered to remain at this season, they will seed in a little time, and fill the walks with weeds.

YOUR choice Carnations, being now in flower, should be carefully attended, to open the pods, when they begin to burst on the contrary side, that they may blow equally; for if this is not done in time, the flower leaves will come all out on one side of the pod, and render them ill shaped. You must also guard them from insects, especially ants and earwigs, which will destroy them in a short time if they can come to them; and the flowers should be covered with glasses or basons, to keep off the wet, and the scorching heat of the sun. But in all this, there must be great diligence in managing them according to the temperature of the season, where persons would excel in the largeness and beauty of their flowers; therefore, the large Carnations are not so proper for persons who have much other business on their hands, but rather for those who want some such easy employment to divert themselves.

YOU may now increase the Double Scarlet Lychnis, by planting cuttings of the flower-stems, each of which should have three or four joints; two of which should be put into the ground,

ground, and the other left above-ground: these must be put in a shady border of light fresh earth, observing to refresh them with water according to the drought of the season, and if these cuttings are closely covered with hand-glasses they will more certainly take root.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you may take off the layers of Pinks, Carnations, Sweet Williams, &c. which have taken root; and plant them either into pots or borders of good fresh earth, where they may continue until you have conveniency of planting them where they are to remain for flowering; for it is not proper to let them continue too long upon the old roots, because if they should not be found, the layers would be infected by them; but when you plant these out, they must be carefully watered and shaded until they have taken root. When these layers are cut off from the old roots, that part of the stalk which came from the old root, should be cut off close to the place where it was slit when they were laid down, and their leaves should be trimmed.

THE latter end of this month you should sow some seeds of annual flowers, in warm borders, to stand through the winter, that they may flower early the next summer; by which method

224 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

thod you may obtain good seeds of many sorts of plants, which, if sown in the spring, do not constantly ripen in this climate, such as the Great Blue and Flesh-coloured Lupines, Sweet-scented Pea, Sweet Sultan, Indian Scabious, Double Lark-spur, Annual Stock, Venus Navelwort, Xeranthemums, Jaceas, with some others. These plants will not only come earlier to flower, but will also grow much larger, and produce their flowers in much greater plenty, than those which are sown in the spring.

YOUR choice Auriculas should now be kept clear from weeds, and all decayed leaves, which if suffered to remain upon them, would rot and spoil them; and they should be placed in a shady situation, but not under the droppings of trees.

THE seedling Auriculas, which came up the last spring, must now be planted out into tubs or pots filled with rich earth and placed in a shady situation; and as they are small, so they must be treated tenderly, giving them water gently; and be careful, that they are not drawn out of the ground by worms, nor eaten by snails or slugs, both which vermin are great enemies to them.

KEEP

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 225

KEEP the walks and quarters of your wilderness free from weeds and litter, and such trees as grow too much out of order may be pruned, so as to render them beautiful; for this is a season when wildernesses and shady walks are chiefly frequented; so that they should be well kept, otherwise they will be disagreeable.

IN this month you may bring your most tender annual plants out of the hot-beds, such as Amaranthus Amaranthoides, Double Balsamine, and some others; which should now be placed in the parterre-garden, to supply the borders where the spring flowers did grow; and are now past; so that by this succession, the borders may be kept in beauty through the summer.

Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE-GARDEN.

CARNATIONS, Pinks, Sweet Williams, Fairchild's Mule, Double and Single Ragged Robin, Dwarf Annual Stock, French Willow, Single and Double Virgins-bower, Antirrhinum or Calves-snout, Linarias of several sorts, Centaurea of several sorts, Everlasting Pea, Sweet-scented Pea, Tangier Pea, Blue-flow-

Q

ered

226 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

ered Lathyrus, Hieraciums, White Lily, Scarlet Martagon, Day Lily, Ornithogalum Spicatum, White Hellebore with green and purple flowers, Aconitum luteum, Anthora, Aconite with large blue and white flowers, Acanthus, Lavateras, Indian Scabious, Sea Holly of four or five sorts, Sweet Sultan, Poppies of divers kinds, Peach-leaved Campanula, Venus Looking glass, Venus Navelwort, Double Ptarmica, Double Feverfew, Double Chamomile, Bupthalmums of two or three kinds, Annual Stock-gilliflower, Double Rose Campion, Larkspurs, Spanish Scrophularia, Nigella, two sorts of African Marigolds, Lupines of several sorts, Amaranthuses, Amaranthoides, Capsicum Indicum, Leucanthemums, Xeranthemums, Red Garden Valerian, Holyhocks, Lychnidea Caroliniana, Lychnidea Spicata, Sun-flowers of several sorts, Virginian Spiderwort, Scarlet Lychnis, Golden-rod of several kinds, French Marigold, Female Balfamine, Marvel of Peru, China Pink, some early sorts of Starwort, Dwarf Lychnis, Candy-tuft, Mal lows of several kinds, Nasturtium Indicum majus & minus, Chrysanthemums, Ricinus or Palma Christi, Globe-thistle three or four sorts, Campanula Pyramidalis, Limoniums of several kinds, Catanance quorundam, Eupato-
riums,

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 227

riums, Greater Centaury of several sorts, Statice Major, Sida of several sorts, Adonis three or four kinds, Apios, Asteriscus, Asteroides, Astragaluses, Molucca Baum, Cardinal flowers, Red and White Chelone, Moth-mullein, Poley-mountain of several sorts, Dittany of mount Sypilis, Tobacco of several sorts, Tree Primrose, Clove-gilliflowers, Double and single Sopewort, Coronilla herbacea flore vario, Heliotropium Majus, Trachelium umbellatum, Eryngiumis, Monarda two or three sorts, Achillæa of several sorts, Dittany of Crete, Cassida of several sorts, Lysimachia spicata, Double Marigold, Moldavica of several sorts, Birds-foot Trefoil, several sorts of Convolvulus, Apocynums of two or three kinds, Swallow-wort with black and yellow flowers, Alyssons, Sclarea of several sorts, Spigelia or Indian Pink, Mimulus, Hydrangea, Dianthera, Parthenia, Dodartia, Conyzas, Cannacorus of North America, Amethystea, Horminums, Purple and Yellow Honeywort, Santolinas, Rudbeckias, Silphiums, Ginseng, Scarlet Beans, Tangier Fumitory, Fumitories of several sorts, Veronicas, Ruyschiana of two sorts, Fabago Belgarum, Helianthemums of several sorts, Pock's Iris, Carolina Rest-harrow, with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

SEVERAL sorts of Roses, Spanish Broom, White Jasmine, Dwarf Yellow Jasmine, Canary Hypericum, Shrubby Stinking Hypericum, Double and Single Pomgranate, Virginian Trumpet-flower, Agnus Castus, or the Chaste tree, Male Cistus several kinds, Cistus Ledon several sorts, Phlomis or Sage tree of several sorts, Oleaster, Shrub Cinquefoil, Spiræa with Willow leaves, Spiræa with Marsh Elder leaves, Althæa frutex, Passion flower, Cytisus Lunatus, Glycine of two sorts, Bladder Sena, Dutch Honeyfuckle, Evergreen Honeyfuckle, Long-blowing Honeyfuckle, Late White Honeyfuckle, Scarlet Virginian Honeyfuckle, the Tulip tree, Virginian Sumach, Myrtle-leaved Sumach, Genista Tinctoria, Genistella, Cytisus hirsutus, Elm-leaved Sumach, Celastrus, Red Spiræa, Itea, Clethra, Periploca, Bignonia, Anonis of several sorts, Cytisus Glaber nigricans, Tartarian Cytisus, White Spanish Broom, Mallow tree, Wormwood tree, Three-thorned Acacia, Pavia, Bastard Indico, Azederach, Luca Broom, Flowering Raspberry, Catalpa, Diervilla, Musk Rose, Kalmia, Virginian Dogwood, Saffras, Ceanothus, Dahoon Holy, Portugal Laurel,

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 229

Laurel, Magnolias, Bays, Hollies, Privet, Monthly Rose, Wild American Rose, Pishamin, Candleberry Myrtle, Tamarisk, Chamæ-læa tricocos, Clematis with blue flowers, Spartium Triphyllum, with some others.

Medicinal Plants which may now be gathered for Use.

TORMENTIL, Winter Savory, Ros Solis or Sun-dew, Sneezwort, Penny-royal, Clowns Woundwort, Origany, Catmint, Milfoil or Nose-bleed, Spear-mint, Pepper-mint, Feverfew, Melilot, Black and White Horehound, Toadflax, Sage of Virtue, Red Sage, Wormwood Sage, Wild or Wood Sage, Mountain Flax, White Lily, Water Lily, Rue, Dittander or Pepperwort, Lovage, Masterwort, Mullein, Sciatica Cress, Speedwell, Jasmine flowers, Hyssop, Clary, Oculus Christi, St. John's-wort, Stœchas or French Lavender, Tansey, Dropwort, Eye-bright, Bears-breech, Lavender, Agrimony, Scordium, Vervain-mallow, Marsh-mallow, Dill, Hemlock, Rest-harrow, Goats-rue, Germander, Thyme, Succory, Basil, Orpine, Calamint, Ox-eye Daisy, Vipers Bugloss, Marigold, Fluellin, Honeyfuckle, Ladies Bedstraw, Motherwort, Hedge Hyssop, Clove-gilliflower, Knot-grass, Comfrey, Black Cherry,

230 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

Dwarf Elder, Cudweed, Mezereon berries, Dodder, Garden-rocket, Hedge-mustard, Gooseberry, Water Dock, Henbane, Mastich, Sweet Cicily, Purslane, Raspberry, Mother of Thyme, Mallow.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE,
GARDEN, and STOVE.*

GATHER the flowers of your Orange trees, where they are produced too close to each other; and where there was a sufficient number of fruit set upon the trees the former month, it will be proper to divest them of all the flowers which are now produced; for these being too late in the season, the fruits which succeed them, will not have time to grow to any considerable size before winter, and so will be in danger of falling off before spring. You should also observe, where you may have overlooked some blossoms the last month, which now are become fruit, to pull them off, leaving but few upon each tree, and those well situated, and upon strong shoots; for where there are too many fruit left upon the trees, it renders them weak: and the fruit, not having nourishment, seldom grows to any considerable size, especially if the trees are in pots or
tubs;

tubs; and where they are upon weak shoots, they rarely come to any thing.

CONTINUE to make cutings of such exotick plants which you want to increase, provided you have not done it the preceding months. The best method of planting cutings at this season, is, to prepare a bed of light rich earth, into which the cutings should be planted; and then arch the bed over with hoops, in order to shade the cutings in hot weather; and observe to water them duly, as they may require; but let them be exposed every night to receive the dew, which will be of great use to them; but this is to be practised upon such sorts of plants as are not very tender, because those will require a moderate hot-bed to make them root, especially the tender succulent plants, such as, Cereus, Euphorbiums, &c. but all the sorts of Geraniums, Myrtles, Jacobæas, Anemonospermoses, Hardy Apocynums, Melianthus, Sorrel tree, Leonurus, African Sage trees, Phlomis, Hermannias, Amber tree, and other shrubs from the Cape of Good Hope, will take root much better in a bed of rich earth, than if planted in a hot-bed.

SHIFT such exotick plants as have been raised from seeds in the spring, putting them into larger pots, according to their various growth;

232 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

and plunge ſuch of them as are tender, into the hot-bed of tanners bark, obſerving to water them and ſhade the glaſſes, until they have taken new root; after which, they muſt have air and water in proportion to the heat of the weather.

W A S H and clean the leaves and tender ſhoots of your choice exotick plants from filth and infects, both which commonly infect them at this ſeaſon (eſpecially thoſe in the bark-ſtove): and if they are not cleaned in time, the plants will ſuffer greatly, beſide the infects will ſpread themſelves over moſt of the other plants in the ſame ſtove ſo as not to be eaſily deſtroyed.

I N hot weather you ſhould give your tender exoticks as much free air as poſſible, eſpecially when there is not much wind ſtirring; and, in the middle of the day, it will be proper to ſhade the glaſſes of the hot-beds where the glaſſes are near the plants, when the ſun is violently hot, otherwiſe the earth in the pots will dry too faſt: this ſhould alſo be practiſed in ſuch ſmall ſtoves, where the glaſſes are near the plants, for in large airy ſtoves, where the glaſſes are at a diſtance, they will not require ſhading, provided the glaſſes are drawn down to admit a large ſhare of air to the plants.

S T I R

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 233

STIR up the tan of such beds whose heat begins to decline, and add a little new bark to them, which will renew the heat, and cause it to continue a considerable time longer: at the same time such plants as require it should now be shifted, giving them larger pots, if their roots have been confined in their former pots.

THE Ananas will now ripen very fast, if the season is warm: therefore when the fruit is cut from the plants, the pots with the old plants should be plunged into a warm bed, to force out the suckers early enough to take off before winter; in order to which, they should have their large leaves shortened, and all the under leaves should be striped off, which will cause the suckers to push out very soon.

WHERE the Anana plants, which are to fruit the next season, have filled the pots with their roots, they may be now shifted into the pots where they are to stand: by doing this so early in the year, they will have time to make good roots before winter: for if they do not fill the pots with their roots before spring, they seldom produce very large fruit. The tan-beds in which the Anana plants are placed for the next year, should be kept in a good tempe-

234 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

temperature of heat, but a large share of free air should be admitted to the plants at all times when the weather is favourable.

MAKE layers of the Spanish, Arabian, and Azorian Jasmynes; as also of all the tender sorts of Granadilla, which will easier take root at the tender joints of the new shoots, than from the shoots of the former year: but you must observe to plunge the pots into which they are laid, in a hot-bed, especially of those sorts which are tender, otherwise they will not succeed.

GATHER all sorts of exotick seeds as they ripen, and spread them upon papers in a dry place to harden and dry; after which they should be carefully preserved in their pods or husks, until the proper season for sowing them.

SUCH of the tender annuals as will endure the open air, should be now set out of the hot-beds, in some well sheltered situation, where they will produce seeds better than if kept constantly in the beds.

WHERE any of your tender stove plants are very much infested with insects, or have contracted much filth upon their leaves, you should wash them clean, and expose them to the open air in a warm situation, where they may be sheltered from strong winds, which will be
of

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 235

of great service to the plants ; but where the plants are much infested with insects, you should wash them with water in which there has been a good quantity of Tobacco stalks steeped, which will effectually destroy the insects, where it is carefully applied, especially if the plants are in health. You should also have some of the top glasses of the stove constantly drawn down every day in warm weather ; for at this season most plants perspire freely ; which, if pent up too close, will cause them to look sickly, and occasion their leaves to change their colour, so that insects will soon attack them.

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE,
GARDEN, and STOVE.*

ORANGES, Lemons, Limes, Citrons, and Shaddocks, Myrtles of several sorts, Amomum Plinii, Barba-Jovis or Silver-bush, Cistus Halimi folio, Cistus Ledon two or three sorts, Male Cistus of several sorts, Spanish Jasmine, Geraniums of several sorts, Tree Scabious of two sorts, Yellow Indian Jasmine, Azorian Jasmine, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Warner's Jasmine, and Arabian Jasmine, Colutea Æthiopica Barbae Jovis folio, Asclepias of several sorts,
Blue

236 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* July.

Blue and Scarlet Cardinal flowers, Elychrys-
sums of several sorts, Cassias of two or three
sorts, Acacia Indica Aldini, Grewia, Sensitive
and Humble plants of several sorts, Coral tree,
Lotus Argentea Cretica, Lotus Hæmorrhoidalis,
Anonis two or three sorts, Granadillas three or
four sorts, Coffee tree, White Spanish Broom,
Fabago with round and oblong fruit, Fabago
with winged fruit, Wackendorfia, Othonna of
two sorts, Cape Phillyrea, Red and White
Oleanders, Double Oleander, Sweet-scented
Oleander, Stapelia of three sorts, several sorts
of Ficoidefes, Creeping Cereus, Large Up-
right Cereus, Ketmias of several sorts, Cotyle-
dons of several kinds, Ricinus or Palma Chri-
sti of several sorts, Papaya, French and com-
mon Physick-nuts, Belly-ache weed, Cotton-
plant, Basella, Hæmanthus Colchici foliis,
Double Indian Nasturtium, Myrto-Cistus,
shrubby Polygala, Digitalis Acanthoides, Heli-
otropium of several sorts, Gnaphaliums, Grass
leaved Marigolds from the Cape, Shrubby
Marigold from the Cape, Shrubby African
Branching Starwort with blue flowers, Lanta-
na of five or six sorts, Phalangiums, Blue
African Crinum, Olives, Tetragonocarpos,
Rhamnuses, Lyciums, Shrubby Periwinkle
from India, Shrubby African Sage with blue
flowers, Lentiscus, Aloes of several sorts, Yucca
Indian.

July. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 237

Indian-flowering Reed, Superb Lily, Turnera, Adhatoda two sorts, Momordicas, Melon-thistle, Quamoclit, Tamarind tree, Amber tree, Diosma three sorts, Sorrel tree, Jacobæa Lily, Phytolacca Mexicana, Phytolacca Malabarrica, Celastrus of two sorts, Wormwood tree, Bermudiana Palmæ folio, Plumeria, Hedyfarums, Amarillises, Broad-leaved Asphodel from the Cape, Pancratium of three sorts, Crinum, Iris Uvaria, Rauwolfia, Piercea, Martynia three sorts, Johnsonia, Phyllanthus, Spigelia, Chironia, China Agnus Castus, Crotolarias, Waltheria, Climbing Dragon, Saururus, Costus, Maranta, Kemferia, Clutia, Ceylon Leadwort, Lotus with black flowers, Ruellias, Solanums of several sorts, Physalis of several sorts, Double Stramonium, Malpighias, Maurocena, Shrubby African Alcea, Perennial Tobacco, Canary, Ox-eye Daisy, African Doria with Orach leaves, Chrysocoma of two or three kinds, Bupleurum arborescens, Caper-bush, Crassulas, Anthericums, African Passerina, Lavatera Africana frutescens, Royenia, Shrubby Heliotropium of Peru, Shrubby Phytolacca of Peru, D'ayena, Ternatea, Kleinia two or three sorts, with some others.

A U-



AUGUST.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

THE begining of this month you must sow Onions, to supply the table early in the spring for sallets, &c. and, lest the winter should prove severe, it will be proper to sow a few Welsh Onions at the same time; for these will endure the greatest cold, when the common sorts are frequently destroyed; but these have a stronger flavour than the common sort, which is the only reason they are not so much esteemed.

You must also sow Spinach, to supply the kitchen in winter and spring. The best sort to endure cold, is the prickly-seeded kind, which is what most people sow at this season, it being much hardier than the round-leaved

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 239

leaved kinds; of this there are two or three sorts, which differ in the size of their leaves; but the largest and most profitable sort, is what the gardeners call the Burdock Spinach.

ABOUT the tenth or twelfth day of this month, you should sow your early Battersea and Yorkshire Cabbage seed; for that which is sown earlier, will run to seed in the spring, if the winter should prove mild: and if it is sown later than this time, the plants will not have strength to resist the cold, nor will they come so early, provided they stand through the winter, as those which are sown at this time.

THE twenty-first or twenty-third day of this month you should sow some Cauliflower-seed for the early crop, to be planted under your bell or hand glasses, and under the walls where they are designed to stand open; you should also sow some more seeds about the twenty-fifth or twenty-sixth day for a second crop, to plant under frames to abide the winter; for it often happens, in a mild season, that many of those plants, which were first sown, run to seed in the spring; three or four days in sowing of these seeds, makes great difference in these plants; therefore, if you have not a second supply, you will be at a great

240 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Aug.

great loss; besides, these will come to flower after the first sowing is gone, so that your table will be supplied much longer with the second sowing.

ABOUT the middle, or toward the end of this month, you should sow some common Cabbage Lettuce, and some Brown Dutch Lettuce to be planted under frames to come early in the spring, and part of the plants may be planted on warm borders without covering, which will live through the winter provided it be not very severe: you may also, toward the end of the month, sow some Cos and Silesia Lettuce, to plant on warm borders near walls, pales, or hedges, where, if the winter doth not prove severe, they will live without any covering, and some of these should be left in the spring upon the same borders, which will be fit for use very early the following season, before those which are transplanted out from these borders, or from under frames: but where they are left, they should not be too close together, nor too near the wall, because they are apt to draw up weak, under walls, pales, or hedges.

IN moist weather transplant Endive and Celery for blanching, which should be well watered to settle the earth to their roots; and if
the

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 241

the weather should alter to drought, they must be duly watered until they have taken good root.

You may now transplant some of the Lettuces, which were sown the former month, to supply the kitchen in autumn: these should be planted in a warm situation, lest the frosts, which often happen early in October, should injure them: they must also be duly watered until they have taken root.

TOWARD the latter end of the month you should sow several sorts of seeds, which remain a long time in the ground, and which, if sown in the spring, will often miscary: as Chervil, Angelica, Lovage, Masterwort, Scurvy-grass, Fennel, Alexanders, Sweet Sefeli, Corn sallet, and some others, which always succeed better when sown at this season, than when they are sown in the spring.

YOUR beds of Coleworts, &c. which were sown the last month, should be carefully weeded; and if the plants are very thick, some of them should be drawn out, and transplanted into another spot, that those which remain may have more room to grow.

CUT off the flowering branches of most sorts of aromattick plants, which are past flowering, as Lavender, Rosemary, Savory, Hyf-

R

sop,

top, &c. that they may make new shoots before winter; but do not perform this work in dry weather, for many times the plants are destroyed by it, especially if they are cut too close, when there happens to be a long drought after.

PULL up Onions, Garlick, Rocambole, and Eschalots, when their leaves begin to wither and fall; and spread them thin in an airy place to dry, before you put them up where they are to remain for winter use.

IN dry weather you must earth up your Celery, which is large enough, observing not to bury the hearts of the plants, for that will rot them. You must also tie up your Endive, which is full grown, or cover them with boards or tiles, to blanch; this must also be performed when the leaves are very dry, otherwise the plants will rot.

YOUR Artichokes, which were planted the last spring, will now begin to shew their fruit; therefore all small suckers, which come out on the sides of their stalks, should be cut off; for if they are permitted to remain on, they will weaken, and starve the top fruit: you should also clear them from weeds, or any other large growing plants, which stand near them.

TRANSPLANT your Broccoli (which was not planted out the former month) into the place where it is to remain for flowering, observing to water it duly until it has taken root. These plants should be planted in rows about two feet asunder, and a foot and half distance from each other in the rows.

You may yet transplant some Savoy, to come late in the spring; but if the winter should prove severe, they will not grow to be large, nor will they cabbage; but in mild winters they often succeed very well, and come late in the spring.

OBSERVE to keep the roots of your Melons from too much wet, which many times causes the plants to decay before the fruit is ripe; especially the Cantaleupe, and other curious sorts of Melons, which are very impatient of wet: so that, where they are treated in the common method, the plants generally decay before their fruit is ripe, whereby it is intirely spoiled.

YOUR Cucumbers for pickling are now in season; therefore they should be looked over twice or three times a week, to gather such as are fit; for, in a short time, they will grow too large for that purpose; these must also be frequently watered in dry weather, which will

cause them to produce a greater quantity of fruit.

T H E Asparagus, which was planted the last spring, should be carefully cleared from weeds; for at this season it will make new shoots, which will be much stronger, where they are not injured by weeds, or other plants, than on the contrary.

A L L your winter crops, as Parsneps, Leeks, Beets, Cabbages, &c. should be constantly kept clear from weeds, which, if suffered to grow, will greatly injure your crops, and will soon scatter their seeds at this season; whereby your ground will be plentifully stocked with weeds, which cannot be rooted out in many years.

T H E dunghills should also be cleared from weeds, particularly Atriplexes and Nightshade, which at this season, are very common upon almost every dunghill; and if the seeds are permitted to scatter, when the dung is carried into the garden, the seeds will be mixed therewith, and thereby fill your ground with weeds; therefore they should be pulled up, and cast into a heap, to rot at some distance from the garden or dunghill, or dried and burned; for if they are only hoed down, and permitted to lie upon the dunghill (as is by some practised), the
seeds

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 245

seeds will ripen as they lie, and be almost as bad as if they had been suffered to grow to maturity.

You may, in this month, plant slips of Sage, Rosemary, Stœchas, Lavender, Mastich, and other aromattick plants, where it was omitted in the spring; but these will not be near so strong, nor so capable of resisting the cold so well, as those planted in the spring; and therefore will require to be sheltered, if the winter should prove severe.

CUT such herbs as are now in flower to distil, or to dry for winter use, always observing to hang them up in a dry shady place; for if they are dried in the sun, they will shrink up, turn black, and be little worth.

CONTINUE to sow the seeds of Cresses, Rape, Turnep, Radish, Mustard, and other kinds of Sallet herbs every week, that the table may not be unfurnished; for these sorts soon grow too large for use at this season.

GATHER all sorts of kitchen-garden seeds, which are now ripe, spreading them upon mats to dry: and then beat or rub them out of their husks or pods, and put them up till the seasons for sowing them.

YOUR Radish seed, which is now in pod, must be guarded, to prevent the birds from

246 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Aug.

devouring it, which they will do in a short time, if they are not continually watched.

Sow Turneps for a latter crop, which may be done any time before the twentieth day of this month; but those which are sown later, seldom apple well, especially if the autumn proves cold.

EARTH up your Finnochia, which is full-grown, to blanch it, that it may be fit for use; and continue to transplant Celery into drills, that you may have a succession to supply the table through the season.

THE Spinach which was sown the last month for winter use, will now be fit to hoe, which should be performed in dry weather, that the weeds which are cut may be soon killed; for in moist weather, they will take root again, so will require another cleaning. At this time the Spinach should be cut down, where it grows too close; for they must not be left closer to each other than three inches, that they may have room to spread.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CABBAGES, Kidney Beans, several kinds of Peas, Artichokes, Garden Beans, Carrots, Cabbage Lettuces of several sorts, Finnochia, Celery,

Aug. The Gardeners Kalender. 247

Celery, Turneps, Cucumbers, Melons, Onions, Purslane, all sorts of young sallit herbs, some late Cauliflowers, Endive, Sorrel, Baum, Burnet, Marigolds, Beet, Spinach, Potatoes, Mushrooms, Tomatos, Basil, Thyme, Savory, Marjoram, Clary, Mint, Sage, Rosemary, Lavender, Hyssop, Capficums for pickling, Cucumbers for pickling, large rooted Parsley, Fennel, Dill, Sprouts from Cabbage stalks, Card Beet, Cicers, Radishes, Scorzonera, Horse-radish, Nasturtium Indicum, the flowers for sallits, and the seeds for pickling; Pumkins, Gourds, Parsneps, and some other sorts.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN *and*
VINEYARD.

Look carefully over your wall-fruit trees, to destroy snails and other vermin, which will gnaw your choice fruits, and spoil them. You should also destroy sparrows and tomtits, which will peck your choice Pears, Figs, and Grapes, as fast as they ripen, where they are not defended: and, where it was not done the former month, you should fix some phials with honey-water on different parts of your trees, to destroy the wasps, which will drown them-

selves by attempting to drink of the water. These phials should be fixed before the fruit begins to ripen, when the wasps and flies will be much sooner inticed to the water, than they will after they have tasted the fruit; so that by the timely use of this method, the fruit may be preserved.

WHERE any branches of your trees project from the wall, or have been displaced by winds, &c. they should be carefully fastened to the wall in their due position, that the fruit may receive the benefit of the sun to ripen it; but do not pull off the leaves of the trees, (as is by some persons practised); for this exposes the fruit too much, whereby it becomes hard, and seldom ripens kindly, especially when it is done long before the fruit is ripe.

YOUR Vines in the vineyard, and those against the walls, should now be gone over for the last time, pulling off all trailing branches which have been lately produced; and fasten those branches which are loose in their proper places, that the fruit (which is now full-grown) may receive the benefit of the sun and air to ripen it. You should also observe to keep the ground clear from weeds between your rows of Vines, that the sun may dry up the moisture of the ground every day; so that
the

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 249

the reflexion of heat may be greater to ripen the fruit.

UNTIE the buds of fruit trees, which were inoculated the last month; otherwise their bandage will pinch the bark of the stocks, and prevent their growing equally in the part where the bud is put in: you should also observe to clear the lower part of your stocks from shoots where any are produced, and keep the ground clear from weeds, near the roots of your fruit trees.

FRUITS in Prime, or yet lasting.

APPLES; the Summer White Coustin, Margaret Apple, Codlin Summer Pearmain, Summer Pippin, and some others.

PEARS; the Jargonelle, Windsor, Cuisse Madame, Orange Musk, Gros Blanquette, Musk Blanquette, Long-stalked Blanquette, Poir sans peau, Muscat Robine, Amber Pear, Green Orange, Caffolette, Magdalen Pear, Gros Oignonet, Poir Rose, Summer Boncretien, Cailot Rosat, Petit Ruffellet, with some others of less note.

PEACHES; Red and White Magdalen, Early Newington, the Mignonne or Minion, Italian Peach, Noblest, Bellows or Bellis, Violette

250 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Aug.

lette Hative, La Chevreuse or Belle Chevreuse, Early Admirable, Albermarle, Nivette Peach, Montauban, Royal George, Purple Alberge, Chancellor, Bourdine, with some others.

NECTARINES; Roman Red, Elruge, Newington, Brugnol, Italian, and Murray.

PLUMS; Orleans, White Perdrigon, Violet Perdrigon, Red Imperial, White Imperial or Bonum Magnum, Le Royale, Chestnut Plum, Drap d'Or, St. Katharine, Roche Courbon, Reine Claude, Myrobalan, Green Gage, La Mirabelle, Apricock Plum, Prune Monsieur, Maitre Claude, Royale Dauphin, with some others.

GRAPES; the July, White Sweet-water, Black Cluster, Munier, Chasselas, White Muscadine, White Frankindal, Black Sweet-water, and Orleans.

FIGS; the Early White, Long Blue, Long White, Black Ischia, Brown or Chestnut Ischia, Large Yellow Ischia, Green with white flesh, Green with purple flesh, and Green with red flesh, Brunswick, Malta, Black Naples, and Cyprus Fig.

FILBERTS, Nuts, Mulberries, Gooseberries, Currants, Black Cherry, Hertfordshire Cherry, Amber Cherry, and Morello Cherry;
Melons,

Aug: The Gardeners Calendar. 251

Melons, and in the Stove, the Anana or Pine Apple.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

THE begining of this month you should look carefully over the stocks which were buded the last month, and loosen the bandage, lest the buds should be pinched thereby: and were there are any shoots produced below the buds, they should be cut off. You should also look over your trees which were buded the former year, or grafted in the spring, cutting off all such shoots as are produced below the place where they were buded or grafted; for if these are permitted to grow, they will starve the buds or grafts.

KEEP your ground clear from weeds between your trees, and train up the several sorts of Evergreens, forest trees, and shrubs, for the several purposes they are designed; but do not trim the stems of standard trees too close, for if they have not some small shoots left on the sides of their stems, to detain the sap, they will not be able to support their heads.

YOU should, toward the end of this month, begin to clear and trench the ground, where
you

252 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Aug.

you intend to plant out stocks, or young forest trees in autumn, that the rain may soak and mellow the ground before the season of planting; and if your land is stiff, the laying of it a month or six weeks in ridges before it is planted, will mellow the clods, and render them much easier to be broken, than if it was newly dug.

Look carefully to your young seedling trees, to observe that they do not suffer by drought, nor that they are over-borne by weeds, which, at this season, do soon get up to a height.

Work to be done in the PLEASURE-GARDEN.

TRANSPLANT the layers of Carnations, Pinks, and double Sweet Williams, which by this time will have taken root, if timely laid. Those choice sorts of Carnations, which are designed for pots, may be planted at this time, each in a small halfpenny pot, filled with fresh light earth, and placed in a shady situation until they have taken root; after which they may be removed into a more open situation, where they may remain until the beginning of October, when they should be placed under a hot-bed frame, or plunged into an old bark-bed, and arched over with hoops, that they may be covered

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 253

covered in winter, to protect them from hard rains, snow, and severe frost; but they should be always opened in mild weather, otherwise they will draw up weak. In this manner they may be much better preserved, than if they were planted out at first into the pots where they are to remain for blowing, because they will stand in a sixth part of the compass; and in the spring they may be turned out of the small pots with the earth to their roots, whereby they will not receive any check, and placed into larger pots to flower. But those Carnations, Pinks, and Sweet Williams, which are designed for the borders of the pleasure-garden, should be now planted in beds in the flower-nursery, to remain till the latter end of next month, when you must dig the borders of the pleasure-garden, and new plant them: at which time these may be taken up with a ball of earth to their roots, and planted in the borders with other flowers.

You may now shift your choice Auriculas into fresh rich earth, observing to clear them from dead leaves, and place them in a shady situation until they have taken root: this fresh earth will strengthen the plants greatly, and improve their flowers the following spring.

You

254 *The Gardener's Calendar.* Aug.

You may yet remove the roots of bulbous Irises, Fritillarias, and Hyacinths of Peru; and also the roots of Lilies, Martagons, Crown Imperials, Paeonias, and Flag Irises, whose leaves are now decayed; but if suffered to remain much longer in the ground unremoved, many of the sorts will push out fresh fibres, when it will be too late to remove them; but especially the white Lilies, because they soon put out new leaves; after which time, if they are removed, they rarely flower the following season.

GATHER all sorts of flower seeds as they ripen, and spread them to dry in the sun; after which they should be preserved in their pods or husks until the seasons for sowing them; for the seeds of most plants may be kept longer good in their pods, than when they are rubbed out.

TRANSPLANT Polyanthus, Primroses, and seedling Auriculas, observing to shade and water them until they have taken root, as also to close the earth to their roots, otherwise the worms will draw them out of the ground; to prevent which, some persons make a bed of cold dung, beating it down very close, then lay good earth thereon, three or four inches thick, and plant their seedling Auriculas into it: this dung keeps down the worms, and preserves

preserves the plants from being turned out of the ground.

CU T down the stalks of such plants as have done flowering, and are decayed; and fasten all tall-growing plants to sticks to support them from being broken or blown down by strong winds, which often reign at this season.

YOUR pots of annual plants must now be daly watered in dry weather, otherwise they will soon lose their beauty; and such of them as are tender should be removed into shelter when the nights begin to be cold, that they may perfect their seeds, which in bad seasons seldom ripen well, if they are not protected from the inclemency of the weather, particularly the double Stramonium, double Balsamine, Quamoclit, deep blue Convolvulus, with some other tender sorts.

TO W A R D the latter end of this month you should begin to prepare your beds to receive your choice Hyacinths, Tulips, and Ranunculuses, that the earth may settle before the roots are planted; otherwise, when the earth sinks unequally, there will be holes on the tops of the beds, which will detain the water, whereby the roots in those places will be roted. If these beds are made three feet deep, and some very rotten neats dung laid in the bottom, the
fibres

256 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Aug.

fibres of these roots will strike down into it in the spring; and, receiving great nourishment from the dung, it will cause them to flower very strong; but the earth of these beds should not be screened very fine, but only the larger stones should be raked out, and all the clods well broken, for when the earth is screened fine, it is very apt to bind in winter.

CLEAN all the parts of your flower-garden from weeds; which, if permitted to stand, will shed their seeds in a short time, whereby your garden will be so stocked with weeds, as not to be rooted out in several years.

YOU may now sow the seeds of Anemonies, Pulsatillas, Ranunculuses, Crocuses, Fritillarias, Hyacinths, Tulips, Narcissuses, Cyclamens, Irises, Auriculas, Lilies, Martagons, Polyanthuses, &c. in pots or boxes filled with light rich earth, observing not to cover those seeds which are thin and light, too deep; for these will rot in the ground when buried deep, especially the Ranunculuses, Pulsatillas, Anemonies, Auriculas, Polyanthuses, and Fritillarias: but the larger seeds may be covered thicker. These pots or boxes should be placed where they may have the morning sun till ten or eleven o'clock; for if they are too much exposed to the heat of the sun at this season,
the

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 257

the seeds will not succeed so well: they must also be frequently refreshed with water, but it should be given very gently, otherwise the seeds will be in danger of being washed out of the ground.

THE seeds of several kinds of annual flowers may now be sown on warm borders to stand the winter, that they may flower early the following summer, whereby they will be much stronger, and produce a greater quantity of flowers, than those which were sown in the spring, and their seeds will constantly ripen better. Of these are the Sweet Pea, Venus Navelwort, Dwarf annual Stock, Lobel's Catchfly, Xeranthemums, Sweet Sultan, Indian Scabious, with some others.

YOU may now propagate the Double Scarlet Lychnis, Double Rose Campion, Double Rocket, Gentianella, Double Ragged Robin, Bachelors Button Red and White, Double Catchfly, and Canada Leonurus, by slipping and parting of their roots; but these slips should be planted in shady borders, or otherwise they must be duly shaded every day in dry hot weather with mats, and constantly supplied with water, until they have taken root: these slips will make very good plants (provided they are carefully looked to) by the beginning
S of

of October; when they may be either planted into pots, or the borders of the flower-garden, where they will flower strong the following season.

THE pleasure-garden must now be duly looked after, to keep it neat; for in moist weather the grass must be frequently mowed, rolled, and polled, to have it fine; the gravel-walks must be kept clean from weeds, and constantly rolled, and as the leaves of trees will often begin to fall at this time, so they should be daily swept up to have the whole garden decent.

Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE-GARDEN.

SOME Carnations, Painted Lady Pink, Old-man's-head Pink, Female Balsamine, Marvel of Peru, Amaranthuses, Amaranthoides, several sorts of Starwort, Golden-rods of several kinds, Scarlet and Blue Cardinal's flower, Campanula, Hollyhocks, Colchicum of Chio, autumnal Cyclamens, Greater Convolvulus of several sorts, Flos Adonis, Venus Looking-glass, Venus Navelwort, Africans, French Marigold, Sweet Sultans, Indian Scabious, Nigellas, Candy tuft, Apocynums, Sweet Pea, Tangier Pea, Ever-lasting

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 259

lasting Peas, Sunflowers of many kinds, Lavateras, Mallows of several sorts, Linarias, Centaureas, Ketmia vesicaria, Stramoniums, Tuberoses, Sclareas, Geraniums, Lychnises, Annual Stocks, Blattaria lutea, Double Ptarmica, Xeranthemums, two sorts of Marigolds from the Cape of Good Hope, Onagras, Lyfimachias, Veronicas, Autumnal Hyacinth, Globe-thistles, Dwarf annual Stock, Nasturtium Indicum, Fairchild's Mule, Virginian Spiderwort, Catanance quorundam, Catanance flore luteo, Elichrysum Americanum, Stœchas Citrina, Double Feverfew, Coronilla herbacea flore vario, Bupthalmums, Eryngiums, Glauciums, Asclepias or Swallow-wort with white, yellow, and black flowers, Periplocas, Capnoides, Aconitum lycoctonum luteum, Aconitum saluterum, Napellus cœruleus, Alceas, Helianthemums, Double Sopewort, Argemone Mexicana, Antirrhinums, Lupines of several sorts, Lavendula folio dissecto, Iris Uvaria, Cerinthe with purple and yellow flowers, Persicaria Orientalis, Physalis of several sorts, Limoniums, Moldavicas, Molucca lævis & spinosa, Solanums of various kinds, Melongenae, Hedyfarums, Phalangiums, Oriental Bugloss, Alyssons, Ambrosia of three sorts, Basil, Capsicum, Palma Christi, Chrysanthemum, Tobacco,

Clinopodium Virginianum, Commelina, China Starwort with single and double Red, Blue, and White flowers, Monarda of three sorts, Trachelium Umbelliferum, Convolvulus minor with white, blue, and striped flowers, Hawkweeds of divers sorts, Purple Jacobæa, several sorts of Anonis, some sorts of Astragalus, Canary Lavender, Sherardia, Echiums, Globularia, Collinsonia, Poliums, Spigelia, Lychnideas, Perennial Blue Lupine, Eupatoriums, Dianthera, Rudbeckia of several sorts, Ruyfchiana, Acanthus, Cirsiums, Greater Centaury, Carthamus, Glycine, Perennial Fumitories of several sorts, Gnaphaliums, Lunarias, Chrysocoma, with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

COMMON White Jasmine, Passion flower, Periploca, Scorpion Sena, Shrubby Althæa of several sorts, Agnus Castus, Ketmias four sorts, Honeyfuckles, Mallow tree, Shrubby Canary Hypericum, Stinking Shrubby Hypericum, Laurustinus, Double Virgins-bower, Bignonia or Trumpet-flower, Angelica tree, Magnolia or Laurel-leaved Tulip tree, Traveler's-joy, Musk Rose, Monthly Rose, Bladder Sena of three sorts, Spanish Broom, Cistuses
of

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 261

of several kinds, Phlomis, Celastrus, Sumach of several sorts, Double and Single Pomegranate, Cytissus of three or four sorts, Catalpa, Clethra, Itea, Diervilla, Hydrangea, Lotus of two sorts, Spireas, Prinos, several sorts of Diers-broom, Tamarisk, Medicago frutescens, Periclymenum Virginianum Azalea, Kalmia, Azederach, Kidney-bean tree, Cashioberry tree, with some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

BEARS-BREECH, Vervain-mallow, Garlick, Dill, Nightshade, Bishopsweed-feed, Love-apple, Vervain, Gooseberry, Arum or Cuckow-pintle-roots, Italian Starwort, Yellow Starwort, Golden-rod, Basil, Summer Savory, Briony-berries, Navew-roots, Honeyfuckle, Capsicum or Indian Pepper, Safflower, Knot-grass, Nettle-feed, Onion-feed, Fleawort, Cornelian Cherry, Coriander-feed, Carrot-feed, Endive, Arse-smart, Jasmine-flowers, Glasswort, Lupine, Marjoram, Tobacco, Poppy-heads, Stee-chas or French Lavender, Thorn apple.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE,
GARDEN, and STOVE.*

ABOUT the begining of this month you may inoculate Orange trees, observing to turn that side of the stock where the bud is put in, from the sun. Cut off Oranges, Jasmines, and other exoticks, which were inarched the former spring, from their mother-trees, being careful in the operation not to loosen the graft from the stock, nor should the clay or wax be rubed off until the following spring.

THE begining of this month is a proper season for shifting Aloes, Sedums, Mesembrianthemums, Cereuses, Euphorbiums, and other exotick succulent plants, which now are in full growth, so will take root again sooner than at any other time of the year: you should at the same time take off the off-sets of your Aloes, and plant them into small pots filled with fresh sandy earth, placing them where they may have the morning sun, observing to refresh them now-and-then with a little water in dry weather; which if duly observed, there will be no occasion to give them any artificial heat to encourage them to take root; for at
this

this season they are greatly disposed to send forth roots.

THE several kinds of tender exotick plants, which are constantly preserved in the Bark-stoves, should now be shifted, that they may make strong roots before winter; for if they are shifted too late in the season, they do not recover it before the cold comes on, which checks their growth, so that they will not appear so vigorous, nor will they be so strong to maintain themselves in winter; but if they are not shifted at this season, their roots will be so mated in the pots that they will grow mouldy in winter, and decay; which has often been destructive to many choice plants.

YOUR beds, in which your Ananas are placed, should be now refreshed with some fresh tanners bark (provided it was not done the former month); for the evenings, toward the end of this month, often begin to grow cold; and if the heat of the beds also decline, the plants will not thrive; and, this being the principal season of their growth, it will prevent their strengthening themselves for fruit the following year; nor will the heads or offsets which have been newly planted, be sufficiently furnished with roots before winter, if the beds are not kept in a kindly temperature of

S 4

warmth;

warmth ; and, as the nights grow cold, the glasses should be covered with mats, to keep them warm : but those plants which are designed to fruit the next year, should not be too much forced at this season, especially those which are large and strong, lest it should drive them into fruit in the winter, which is often the case : and even suckers, taken off early the same season, are sometimes forced into fruit a year too soon, when they are kept too hot, or by receiving a great check in their growth. Those plants which are to produce fruit the following year, should now be shifted into the pots, where they are to remain, if it was not done in July ; for if they are disturbed later in the season, they will not have time to make good roots before winter. This is to be understood of such plants as are designed to fruit in the pots : for those which are to be planted in the tan at Michaelmas, should not be disturbed at this season ; and they must never be transplanted after they shew their fruit ; for that will greatly retard them, and cause their fruit to be small.

THE several kinds of hardy Green-house plants should now be shifted, and those which require it must have larger pots ; for if their roots are too much confined, and mated about
the

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 265

the pots, they will grow mouldy and decay. When they are shifted, they should be placed in a shady situation, until they have taken root; after which they may be exposed again in the sun, until the time of housing them: but you should not expose them too much to strong winds, which will blow them out of the pots again, when they have been lately removed.

Y O U should now take some of the earth out of the tubs or pots of Orange trees, filling them up again with rich fresh earth; which will encourage them to support their fruit in winter.

W A S H and cleanse the leaves and stems of your Coffee trees, and other exotick plants, from filth, which they are very subject to contract at this season; and if it be not cleaned off, will entice vermin to the great injury of your plants.

T O W A R D the latter end of the month, you may remove your Ceruses, Euphorbiums, and other very tender succulent plants, which have been placed abroad, into the Stove again; for, at this season, the nights begin to grow cold, and there often happens much rain; which is very injurious to these plants, when they are exposed thereto; but if the season is warm, they may continue abroad a fortnight longer.

Plants

*Plants in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

GERANIUMS of several sorts, Mesembrianthemums of various kinds, Stapelia, several sorts of Aloes, Sedums, Cotyledons, Myrtles, Oranges, Cistuses, Colutea Æthiopica, several sorts of Passion flower, Sensitive Plant, Humble Plant, Indian Figs, Oleanders, Alceas, Ketmias of several sorts, Hæmanthus, Cardinal flower, Ægyptian Sea Lavender, Leonurus minor, Anemonospermum, Myrto-Cistus, Jatropha of several sorts, Quamoclit, Spanish Jasmine, Arabian Jasmine, Azorian Jasmine, Indian Yellow Jasmine, Laurel-leaved Jasmine, Apocynums, Acacias, Sena Alexandrian, Cassias of several sorts, Hedysarums, Elichrysums, Indian Nasturtium with a double flower, Jacobæas, Dorias, Senecio folio retuso, Canna Indica, Fabagos, Trachelium umbellatum Azurium, Limonium Asplenii folio, Limonium Siculum Gallas ferens, Turnera, Convolvuluses of several sorts, Plumeria, Phytolacca, Piercea, Poliums, Solanums, Lotus argentea Cretica, Martynia, Indian Arrow root, Cestrum, Basella, Cotton plant, Indigo plant, Guava, Costus Arabicus, Eupatoriums, Asteriscus,

Aug. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 267

riscufes, Papaya, Conyzas, Cereufes, Euphorbiums, Melon Thistles, Diosma of three sorts, Blue flowering Sage from the Cape, Crinum, Pancratiums, Limodorum, Kempfera, Clitoria, Spigelia, Passerina, Royenia, Arum scandens, Waltheria, Polyanthes, Sidas, Caper, Chironia, China Chaste tree with cut leaves, several sorts of Ricinus, Crotolarias, Anonifes, Malpighia, Kleinia two or three sorts, Grewia, Volkhameria, Black flowering Lotus, Mille-
ria, Guanabanus, Cornutia, Turnefortia, Polygala, Hermannias, Saururus, Plumbago, Buphthalmums, Wackendorfia, Ambrosia from Peru, D'Ayena, Shrubby Heliotropium of Peru, blue branching Starwort from Africa, Erhetia, Robinia, Tradescantia, Commelina, Wormwood tree, Kiggelaria, Canary Convolvulus, Shrubby Convolvulus, Bignonias, Lantana of several sorts, Sorrel tree, Toxicodendron, Cras-
fulas, Cyanella, with some others.





SEPTEMBER.

*Work to be done in the KITCHEN-
GARDEN.*

THE middle of this month you must pick out your Cauliflower-plants which were sown in the last, placing them either upon old Cucumber or Melon beds; for if they are put upon beds without any dung under them, the worms will draw them out of the ground; but if the season proves cold, and your plants are backward, it will be proper to make some beds with warm dung, which will bring them forward: the distance which these plants should be allowed in these beds is three inches from row to row, and about two inches asunder in the rows, which will be sufficient room for them to grow till toward the end of October, when

when they must be transplanted again into their winter-beds, or in rows to be covered with bell or hand-glasses.

TOWARD the end of this month, you must sow some seeds of Cos, Cilisia, and brown Dutch Lettuces, to plant under frames or hand-glasses. These may be covered in severe frost; so that if those on the warm borders are destroyed, these may be preserved; and if those should escape, these will come after them; and the table may be better supplied.

THE Cardoons which were planted out in June, should now be earthed up; in doing of which, you must carefully tie up their leaves with an hay-band; then lay the earth up to each plant, about eighteen inches high, being careful not to bury their hearts: this work should always be performed in dry weather.

YOU may now make mushroom-beds; in doing of which, you must observe to make choice of such dung as hath lain about three weeks or a month on an heap, whereby its great heat is lost, nor should the dung, intended for this purpose, be thrown on a heap to ferment, as is the practise for hot-beds, because if it ever is violently hot, it will not take the spawn of the mushrooms near so well, as that dung which has not been much ferment-
ed,

ed, which is the reason why some persons prefer the dung of stone horses to that of other animals; and let your knobs of spawn be laid to dry in a shady place a fortnight before you put them into the bed. The particular directions for making of those beds may be seen in the *GARDENERS DICTIONARY*.

HOE and clean Turneps; and the Spinach, which was sown the last month, from weeds, cutting out the plants where they are too close, observing, if possible, to do this in dry weather; otherwise the weeds will take root again, and be very troublesome. You should also weed the beds of Onions, Carrots, Cauliflower, Cabbage plants, and Coleworts, which were sown the last month; for if the weeds are permitted to grow, they will soon overtop the plants, and spoil them.

EARTH up your Celery as it advances in height, observing always to do it in dry weather; and be careful not to earth it above the hearts of the plants, because that would prevent its growing tall, and many times occasion its rotting.

THE middle of this month you may safely transplant most sorts of perennial aromatick plants, as Rosemary, Lavender, Stœchas, &c. which will take root again before the frost comes

come on to prevent them; but this should be done in moist weather.

CONTINUE to sow small Sallet herbs, such as Radish, Turnep, Cresses, Mustard, Chervil, &c. but as the cold increases, they should have a warmer situation, otherwise the morning frosts will loosen the ground, and thereby turn their roots out to the air, whereby they will be destroyed.

GATHER all sorts of seeds as they ripen, and spread them to dry upon mats or cloths; and then beat them out of their husks, and put them up in a dry place, until the seasons for sowing them.

IN moist weather you may transplant your Colewort plants, which were sown in July, into the places where they are to remain till spring; and you should also transplant your Cabbage plants which were sown the beginning of August, that they may acquire strength before they are planted out for good.

TRANSPLANT some of your late sown Endive on borders under warm walls, pales, or hedges, to stand till February before it is blanched; and in dry weather tie up such Endive as is full grown, to blanch it for use, or if the plants are covered close with tiles or boards, they will blanch equally well.

IF

IF the season should prove dry, you should water your last crop of Cauliflowers, which are to come the next month; otherwise their heads will be very small, especially if the ground be dry.

CONTINUE to keep all your late crops clear from weeds; for if they are not well cleaned before the great rains of autumn fall, it will be difficult to destroy the weeds afterward: for, at this season, the weeds are generally produced in plenty.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you should transplant Lettuces of several sorts upon warm borders, where they may remain to cabbage early in the spring; but you may plant them pretty close together at this season, because, if they live through the winter, part of them may be transplanted out in the spring into an open spot of ground, where they will grow larger than those left in the border, but will not be fit for use so soon by a fortnight or three weeks; which is an advantage, in having them continue so much longer to supply the table.

YOU may now cut down the haulm of Asparagus, which is begining to wither, and clear the weeds off from the beds into the alleys where they should be buried; and the earth of
the

the alleys should be laid upon the beds to new mould them; and where the beds want dunging, there should be some very rotten dung taken out of old Cucumber and Melon beds, and laid upon the Asparagus beds, after the weeds are hoed off, and then the dung covered over with part of the earth from the alleys.

IF there should happen much rain at this season, your young Cauliflower plants must be protected therefrom; otherwise it will cause their tender stems to turn black, and the outer skin will decay in a short time. This is what Gardeners term Black shanked.

MOST of your summer crops being intirely cleared from off the ground, you should, in dry weather, hoe and clear the ground from weeds, which will preserve it neat and clean until you shall prepare it for fresh crops, or trench it up to lie till spring; the suffering of weeds to grow after the crops are taken off the ground, impoverishes it, though the weeds are not suffered to seed.

AT the end of this month you may plant some Beans, and sow some early Peas, in warm borders; where, if they abide the winter, they will produce their crops early the succeeding spring.

T

TRANS-

274 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

TRANSPLANT your latter crop of Celery into drills, which, at this season, should always be planted on drier ground than the former crops; for as this is to remain till the spring, so it will be in danger of rotting on a very moist soil.

You should now transplant the last crop of Broccoli where it is to remain, that it may acquire strength before the frost comes on to check it; and you should draw earth up to the stems of your former crops, which will greatly protect them from the frost.

THERE may now also be some Carrot seeds sown upon warm borders, where, if they survive the winter, they will come early in the spring, whereby the table may be supplied with young Carrots for a month or six weeks, before those which are sown in the spring will be fit for use.

Products of the **KITCHEN-GARDEN.**

CABBAGES, Carrots, Artichokes, Parsneps, Potatoes, Shallots, Onions, Leeks, Garlick, Celery, Endive, Cabbage Lettuce of several sorts, Scorzonera, Salsafy, Mushrooms, Cucumbers for pickling, Melons, Kidney Beans, Round-cival Peas, Marrowfat Peas, Garden Beans
planted

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 275

planted late, Beets, Turneps, Radishes, large rooted Parsley, black and white Spanish Radishes, Sprouts from the early Cabbage stalks; and for Soups, Chervil, Sorrel, Tomatos, Gourds, Squashes, Burnet, Cardoon, Chard Beets, Parsley, Origanum; as also Thyme, Basil, Marjoram, Hyssop, Winter-savory, and all sorts of young Sallet herbs.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

Y O U R fruits should now be gathered as they ripen, for those which are in eating this month seldom continue long good; but toward the end of the month, some sorts of winter fruit will be fit to gather; but you should always suffer them to remain as long upon the trees as the weather will permit; for when they are gathered too early, their skins will shrivel, and the fruit will not keep well; and there will be no danger of their suffering upon the trees until the mornings begin to be frosty, when you must not let the fruit hang longer, especially the melting Pears, because if the frost should pinch their skins, it would greatly injure them. You must always observe to gather your fruit when they and the leaves of the trees are perfectly dry, otherwise your fruit will not keep.

THE Grapes of the Vineyard, which are now almost ripe, must be guarded from birds, otherwise they will make great havock of them where they are suffered to feed upon them without molestation; and where the birds have pecked any of the Grapes, the flies and wasps will immediately attack them, and eat them up.

TRANSPLANT Strawberries, Raspberries, Gooseberries, and Currants, toward the end of this month, if the weather proves moist, otherwise it will be better to defer it until the beginning of the next month: and this is the best season to plant cuttings of Gooseberries and Currants; which will take root, and make better plants than those which are propagated by suckers.

YOUR fruit trees against the wall of your forcing frame, must now be pruned and trained close to the wall or espalier, that their buds may be preparing before the season for applying the heat.

YOU should now prepare the ground where fruit trees are designed to be planted the next month, that it may lie to mellow and sweeten, and where new borders are made, the ground will have time to settle, before the trees are planted; but if the borders were prepared in the former month, the ground should be now turned over again, which will prevent the growth

growth of weeds, and be of great service in exposing the earth to the air, and hereby the clods will be broken and rendered fit to receive the trees.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEACHES; the Nivette, Portugal Peach, Belle-garde or Gallande, Rossanna, Pourpree tardive, Purple Alberge, Old Newington, Teton de Venus, Pavy Ropal, Admirable, Monstrous Pavy of Pompone, Catharine, Rambouillete, Malacoton.

PLUMS; White Pear Plum, Bonum Magnum, Green Gage, Reine Claude, Perdrigon, St. Catharine, and Imperatrice, Damsons, and Bullace.

PEARS; Poir de Prince, Autumn Bergamot, Swiss Bergamot, Brute Bonne, Beurre-rouge, Doyenne or St. Michael, Verte-longue, Mouille Bouche d'Automne, Summer Boncretien, Rousselet de Reins.

GRAPES; the Chasselas, White Muscadine, Red Muscadine, Black Morillon, Red Morillon, White Morillon, Currant or Corinth Grape, Parsley-leaved Grape, Black, Red, and White Frontiniacs, Warner's Red Hamburgh, Black Hamburgh, St. Peter or Hesperian Grape,

278 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

Orleans, Malmsey, Miller Grape, Damask Grape, Pearl Grape, Party-coloured Grape, with some others.

SEVERAL sorts of Figs, Walnuts, Filberts, Hazle-nuts; and, against north walls, some Currants and Morella Cherries, Melons, Quinces, Medlars, Lazaroles.

APPLES; Embroidered Apple, Pearmain Golden Rennet, Red Calville, White Calville, Courpendu, Aromatick Pippin, Rennet Grise, Cathead, Quince Apple, Spice Apple, with some others.

IN the bark-bed, the Ananas, or Pine apple.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

THE middle or latter end of this month, you may plant cutings of Laurel in shady borders, observing to water them frequently in dry weather, which will promote their taking root; for at this season there is little danger of their growing, provided they are duly watered.

YOU may also plant cutings of Honey-suckles, Gooseberries, Currants, and several other hardy trees and shrubs, which will grow from cutings; for at this season they generally succeed better than in spring.

THE

THE ground where you intend to plant out your young stocks for fruit trees, and other hardy trees and shrubs should now be well dug (if it was not done the former month), that the rain may soak into it, and moisten it before the trees are planted.

TOWARD the end of the month you may begin to transplant some sorts of fruit trees, forest trees, hardy shrubs, &c. observing to remove those first, whose leaves are most decayed; but, if the season should prove dry, it will be better to defer it till rain falls; but if there is a necessity to remove them, they must be now and then watered, otherwise their bark will shrink; and those trees, which are thus early removed, will push out new fibres in a fortnight or three weeks time: but these trees should be well supported with stakes, otherwise the strong winds will blow them out of the ground in winter, and destroy their young roots. You should also lay some mulch upon the surface of the ground about their roots, to prevent the frost from penetrating the ground, which would greatly damage these new fibres; but this need not be done till the frosty weather begins. The trees thus managed will be so well settled and rooted before the succeeding summer, that dry weather will

not injure them near so much as those planted in the spring; for which reason most good nursery-men choose to plant out their quarters of stocks for fruit, forest trees, and flowering shrubs, at this season, because where there are large quantities, it would be very expensive to water them: but, for very moist land, it will be better to defer this planting till spring, because the wet in winter will rot the tender fibres of new-planted trees, as fast as they are put out.

WHERE Firs, Pines, and other resinous trees are grown so rude as to require some of their branches to be cut off, this is the best season for such operations; for now they are not so subject to weep, as in the spring; and there will be time for their wounds to heal over before the great rains in winter comes on or hard frost, both which are hurtful to fresh wounded trees.

Work to be done in the FLOWER-GARDEN.

DIG the borders of your flower-garden, and if they require it, add some fresh earth, or very rotten dung to them, and plant all sorts of hardy flowers therein, observing to mix them in such a manner, that there may be

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 281

be a regular succession of flowers throughout the season, in the different parts of the garden.

NOW is the time for transplanting your biennial and perennial flowers, which were sown in the flower-nursery, into the borders of the pleasure-garden, where they are designed to flower.

YOUR layers of Pinks, Carnations, and Sweet-Williams, which have not been transplanted from the old roots the former month, should be no longer deferred; because, if they are not planted early in September, they will not have time enough to take root before the frosty weather comes on, so that they will be in danger of suffering thereby.

PLANT early Tulips in a warm situation, where they may be defended from cold winds; in which places they will flower in March, or earlier, according as the season is more or less forward.

YOU must now plant your choice Hyacinth roots; in doing of which, after having prepared the beds with good earth (mixed up according to the directions given in the GARDENERS DICTIONARY), about three feet deep, you should take the earth out of the beds about six inches deep; then make the bottom level, and draw the lines across at the distance

distance which the roots are to be placed, that they may stand in rows at equal distances; and then place the roots exactly in the middle of each square, and lay the earth on them gently, being careful not to displace the roots: these beds must be filled up about five inches thick with earth, above the top of the bulbs. This is a much better method of planting these roots, than that of making holes for each root with a dibble or instrument.

Y O U R box edgings, which are grown too thick, should now be taken up and parted, and planted down again; and those edgings which were planted the last season, and have not succeeded well, may now be repaired.

P R E P A R E your beds for the choice Anemonies, Ranunculuses, and Tulips, the beginning of this month, if it was not done the last; for the earth should be allowed some time to settle, before the roots are planted; otherwise it will settle unequally afterwards, when there will be danger of losing the roots in those places where the beds settle in holes, because the wet will be detained there, which will rot them.

T H E beginning of the month you should plant some of your ordinary double Anemonies in warm borders, where they may be screened

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 283

screened from cold winds ; in which places they will flower early in the spring, provided the season proves favourable.

S L I P and plant out Polyanthuses, Primroses, London pride, Thrift, double Catchfly, Pinks, Peach leaved Bellflower, Scarlet Lychnis, Rose Campion, Daiesies, double Camomile, double Ragged Robin, Feverfew, and all sorts of hardy fibrous rooted plants, which are propagated by parting their roots ; observing to close the earth fast to their roots when you plant them, otherwise the worms will draw them out of the ground.

C U T down the stalks of such flowers as are decayed, and, if you do not transplant them, dig the ground about them, and add some rotten dung, or fresh earth, to the borders, which will greatly strengthen their roots.

Y O U may yet sow the seeds of Irises, Tulips, Crown Imperials, Hyacinths, Fritillarias, Colchicums, Cyclamens, Ranunculuses, Anemonies, and most other bulbous or tuberosse rooted flowers ; though it were better if done the middle of the last month, especially if the season was moist ; otherwise it is as well this month, provided it be done early. These seeds should be sown in pots or tubs, filled with light fresh earth ; and the seeds should

284 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

should be sown pretty thick, observing not to cover them too thick with earth, especially the Ranunculuses and Anemonies, whose seeds are very thin, and subject to rot, if buried too deep. These pots or tubs must be placed to have the morning sun until the beginning of the next month, when they must be removed into a warmer situation. You must also observe, if the season should prove dry, to refresh them gently with water.

Sow the seeds of Auriculas and Polyanthus in pots or boxes of light rich earth, being very careful not to bury the seeds too deep, which often destroys them, or at least will cause them to remain in the ground until the second spring, before the plants will come up.

TOWARD the latter end of the month you may plant your choice Anemonies, Ranunculuses, and Tulips, observing always to do it in showery weather, when the earth is not over dry; for if it should continue dry weather any considerable time after the roots are planted, they will grow mouldy and decay. These roots must be planted about six inches asunder, and the Anemonies and Ranunculuses should be covered about two inches with earth, over the top of their roots; but the

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 285

the Tulips should have at least six inches of earth above their roots, which will cause them to flower very strong.

IF the season should prove very wet, you should shelter your pots of choice Auriculas and Carnations therefrom, or lay the pots down on one side, that the wet may run off; for great rains, at this season, will fill the mould in the pots so full of moisture, that it will not dry again before winter, which will rot or greatly injure your choice flowers.

TOWARD the end of the month you may transplant most sorts of hardy flowering trees and shrubs which will succeed better when they are removed at this season than in the spring, especially upon dry grounds, and will not require so much watering the following summer: for they will, at this season, take root in a short time; and so being well rooted before the drought of the spring comes on, there will be little danger of their miscarrying thereby.

THIS is a proper season for parting and transplanting all the sorts of flag-leaved Irises, Peonies, Aconites, Fraxinellas, Gentianellas, tuberose-rooted Geraniums, Asphodel Lilies, Double Meadowsweet, Lily of the Valley, Solomon's Seal, Acanthus, Hardy Apocynums, Columbines,

286 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

Columbines, &c. that they may be well rooted before the spring, otherwise they will not flower well the following summer. You may also part the roots of the early flowering Asters and Golden-rods, whose stalks are beginning to wither; and plant them out into large borders, allowing them proper room, otherwise their roots will spread over whatever plants grow near them.

THIS is the best season for transplanting all sorts of hardy wood plants and flowers into wilderness quarters, where they will make a fine appearance the spring following.

IT is also the best season to transplant Laurels, Laurustinuses, and Arbutus; for the Laurels now begin to prepare their buds for the next year's shoots, and the other two begin now to produce their flowers: so that the sooner they are planted, when the rains begin to fall in the autumn, the better they will succeed.

*Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE-
GARDEN.*

ANNUAL Stock-gilliflowers, Scabiouses, Sweet Sultan, Marvel of Peru, Female Balsamine, China Pinks, Africans, French Marigolds,

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 287

golds, Hollyhocks, Chrysanthemums, Capsicums, Lupines of several sorts, Sweet-scented Peas, Tangier Peas, Double Ptarmica or Sneezwort, True Saffron, Carthamus or Bastard Saffron, Autumnal Crocuses, Cyclamens, Colchicum, Autumnal Hyacinth, Asters of several sorts, five or six sorts of Golden-rod, Double Sopewort, Double Camomile, Larkspurs, Tree Primrose, Polyanthus, Spiderwort, Auriculas, Snap-dragon, Venus Looking-glass, Venus Navelwort, Candy tuft, China Starwort, Ox-eye, Helianthemums, Heliotropium, Lychmises, Campanulas, Autumnal Gentians, Scarlet Bean, Oriental Persicaria, Stramoniums, Solanums, Alkekengi with large blue flowers, Santolinas, Chrysocoma, Chelone with white and red flowers, Poliums, Amaranthoides, Xeranthemums, Jaceas, Oriental Mallow, Lavatera, Dwarf Annual Stock, Ketmia vesicaria, several sorts of Sun-flower, Elichrysums, Eupatoriums, Hearts-ease, Red Garden Valerian, Catanance quorundam, Ruyschiana, Rudbeckia, Silphium, large blue Aconite, Wholsome Wolfsbane, Cerinthe, Alysson fruticosum, Alyssoides, Dianthera, Hydrangea, Tetragonotheca, Monarda, Ambrosia, Old Man's Head Pink, Anonifes two or three sorts, Scrophularias, Dodartia, Echiums, Bugloss of three

or

288 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

or four kinds, Convolvulus of several sorts, Double and Single Indian Nasturtium, with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

JASMINE, Monthly Rose, Musk Rose, Passion-flower, Arbutus, Pomegranate with double flowers, Shrub Cinquefoil, Mallow tree, Althæa frutex, Ketmia Syriaca, Laurustinus, Honeyfuckle, Scorpion Sena, Agnus Castus, Rhus of several sorts, Celastrus, Medicago frutescens, Shrubby St. Johnswort, Itea, Clethra, Kalmia, Azalea, Dwarf Medlar from Crete, Spanish Broom, Pockocks Bladder Sena, Hamamelis Symphoricarpos, Cistuses, Lucca Broom, Cytissus hirsutus, Tamarisk, with some others.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

CALAMUS aromaticus, Winter Cherry, Arum or Cuckow-pintle roots, Wholsome Wolfbane roots, Berberry fruit, Hemp seed, Capsicum or Indian Pepper, Bastard Saffron, Cucumber seed, Bitter Vetch seed, Fennel seed, Fenugreek seed, Alisander seed, Walnut fruit,

Sept. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 289

fruit, Lettuce seed, Lentil seed, Lovage seed, Gromwell seed, Flax seed, Hops, Millet seed, Sweet Fern seed, Garden Cress seed, Macedonian Parsley seed, Candy Carrot seed, Common Parsley seed, Radish seed, Elderberries, Savin, Sefeli seed, Flixweed seed, Mustard seed, Nightshade, Golden-rod.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

YOUR very tender sorts of succulent plants which were removed out of the stove in summer, must now be carried in again, especially if the season prove wet, or the nights cold; for, by the favourableness of the weather, these plants are sometimes permitted to remain abroad until the end of this month, when, at other times, the weather will oblige you to carry them in at the beginning of the month; for much wet is very prejudicial to them, and small morning frosts would destroy or greatly damage many of them: therefore you must be directed by the season, when to remove your plants into the house.

IF the bark beds, in which your Pine apples are plunged, have lost their heat, they should be refreshed by stirring the bark up
U with

with a fork, and adding some fresh bark thereto, which will renew the heat; and, if the nights prove cold, the glasses should be carefully covered, that the plants may be kept in a growing state; for it is better to keep them in the bark until the middle or end of October, if the season be not too cold, than to place them in the stove too early; because, whenever you remove them into the stove, there must be fires made every night, which will dry the earth in the pots so fast, that they will require to be frequently watered, which is not so proper for these plants at this season; but this is to be understood of such plants only, as are placed in a dry stove in winter; for those which are designed to be plunged into a bark bed in the stove, may be removed thither toward the end of the month; at which time the tan must be renewed with a sufficient quantity of that which is new, that it may retain a warmth through the winter; and those plants which are to be planted into the tan for the next year's fruit, should be now shaken out of the pots, and planted as they are designed to remain, that they may make good roots before winter; for upon this depends their producing of large fruit.

TOWARD

TOWARD the latter end of this month you should remove your Orange trees into the green-house, observing always to do it in a dry day, when the leaves have no moisture upon them; and place them thinly in the house, and as near the windows as possible; for there will be no occasion for placing them where they are to stand during the winter, until the Myrtles, and other hardy plants, are brought into the house, which need not be done until the middle or end of October, unless the nights should prove very cold and frosty; for the longer you can keep these plants abroad, the better they will thrive, and be in less danger of suffering in winter; but if the Orange trees are kept abroad too long, their leaves will change to a pale yellowish colour; and when this happens, they rarely recover their verdure till the following summer.

YOUR other kinds of exotick plants, which are to be placed in the stove, or in glass cases without fires, must be removed into shelter as the season grows cold, beginning with the tenderest first, and so proceed on to the more hardy kinds; and never place them in exact order until they are all housed.

THE latter end of this month, or the beginning of the next, you should prepare your

tan beds in the stove, to receive the tenderest exotick plants, which should be placed therein, when the bark begins to warm; but you must be careful not to suffer the bark to heat violently, for that would injure the roots of the plants, and endanger their health; because, when they receive damage at this season, it is almost impossible to recover them in winter; therefore if you find the bark too hot, you must not plunge your pots therein until the heat be abated.

WHEN you place your exotick plants in the house, you should observe to pick off all decayed leaves from them, and clear their leaves and branches from filth or insects, which, if permitted to remain upon them, will greatly injure them; and you must stir the earth in the pots with a small trowel, being careful not to injure the roots of the plants; and where the stems or branches of the plants have contracted filth, they should be well cleaned before they are placed in the stove.

*Plants now in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

OLEANDERS with double and single flowers, Colutea *Æthiopica*, Anomum *Plinii*, Myrtles, Tree Candy tuft, Scabious tree, House-leek tree, several sorts of *Ficoidefes*, Cotyledons, Aloes, Indian Fig, double *Nasturtium*, Spanish Jasmine, Azorian Jasmine, Yellow Indian Jasmine, Arabian Jasmine, *Polyanthes*, Guernsey Lily, Belladonna Lily, *Leonurus*, *Cytifus incanus*, Capers, Granadillas, Sensitive and Humble plants, *Heliotropium arborescens*, Amber tree, *Apocynums*, Lantanas of several sorts, *Abutilons*, *Fritilaria crassa*, *Canna Indica*, Bean Caper, Indian Arrow-root, African Alcea, African Groundfel tree, Indigo, Palma Christi, Spurges, *Euphorbium*, Physick Nut, *Elichrysums*, *Grewia*, Papaw, *Turnera*, *Stramoniums*, *Diosmas*, *Chironia*, *Anemonospermofes*, *Solanums*, *Spartiums*, *Dorias*, *Lotus Hæmorrhoidalis*, Cardinal's flower, *Cassias*, *Sena Alexandrina*, *Sena Spuria*, *Ketmias*, *Piercea*, *Pancratiums*, *Crinum* two sorts, *Hæmanthus*, *Plumeria*, *Bauhinia*, *Martynia*, *Milleria*, *Cestrum*s, Helleborine, *Rauwolfia*, *Malpighia*, *Convolvulufes*, *Baffella*, *Alkekengi* three or

294 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Sept.

four sorts, Spigelia, Oldenlandia, Maurocenia, Cliffortia, Lotus with black flowers, African Wood sorrel, Ornithogalum luteum, Kleinia, Saururus, Anthericums, Ginger, Costus, Kempferia, Volkhameria, Galingale, D'ayena, Ruellias, Barleria, Sweet-scented Heliotrope from Peru, Phylica, Commelina, Rondeletia, Upright Torch Thistle, Clutia, Geraniums of several sorts, Arums, Tournefortia, with some others.



OCTO-



OCTOBER.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

IF your Asparagus beds were not dressed in the former month, they should now be done by cutting down the withered haulm, and hoeing the weeds from off the beds into the alleys; then dig the alleys, and cast the earth over the beds, burying the weeds in the alleys; but where the beds want manuring, you should spread some very rotten dung over them after the weeds are cleaned off, and then spread the earth of the alleys thereon. When this is finished, there may be one row of Cabbage or Colewort plants planted in the middle of each alley, where, in severe winters, these will often escape, when those

U 4

planted

planted on the level ground are destroyed; and as they will be taken away in March, by the time the Asparagus beds are dressed in the spring, they will not injure it in the least.

IN dry weather you should continue to earth up Celery and Cardoons to blanch them; and draw up some Endive, which is full grown, to plant down on the sides of the ridges to blanch; because the cold, at this season increasing, will injure it where it remains above ground tied up to blanch, as was directed in the former month, especially if the season proves frosty; but in mild seasons the Endive, which is tied up, will continue good till the end of next month.

TRANSPLANT your brown Dutch, and common Cabbage Lettuces, upon warm borders, near walls, pales, or hedges, to abide the winter; as you may also some Cos, Cilicia, and Imperial Lettuces; but it will be proper to plant some of all these sorts upon beds, to be covered with frames or mats in winter; because, if the frost should be very severe, it will destroy the latter sorts, where they are exposed to the open air. But those plants which are put under frames, should be smaller than those planted in open borders; because the
large

large plants, when covered, will be apt to draw up too weak.

Y O U R Spinach, Carrots, Onions, &c. which were sown the end of July, or in August, must now be kept clean from weeds; for if they are permitted to grow, they will overrun and spoil your crops, especially the Spinach, which will rot off wherever the weeds spread over it.

P L A N T Beans, and sow Peas, upon dry grounds, and in warm situations, which should be repeated twice; the first at the beginning, and the other at the end of this month; because if the first should be too forward to stand the winter, the other, being later sown, may succeed.

T O W A R D the end of this month, you should transplant your Cauliflower plants into the places where they are to abide the winter: some of which should be put under bell or hand glasses, if you have any, observing to plant two plants under each glass, because if one of them should fail, the other will be sufficient; for in the spring, if they both live through the winter, one plant must be transplanted out. These plants which are put under glasses, will come earlier than those which are wintered in beds, and transplanted

ed out in the spring. You may also plant some of these plants on warm borders, near walls, pales, or hedges; where if the winter doth not prove very severe, they will stand very well.

— Your Cabbage plants, which were sown in the begining of August, should now be transplanted out for good (especially those of the early kind); but it will be proper to have some plants in a warm situation reserved, lest the frost should destroy those which are planted out for good; or if any of these now planted out, run up to seed in the spring, which is frequently the case in mild seasons, or when the seed is sown too early; you may have a supply of plants to make them good. As to the long sided Cabbage, which is a later sort, that need not be planted out for good till February.

If you have sown any beds of Welsh Onions, you should clean them from weeds; for at this season their blades will intirely decay, so that many persons have supposed the Onions were dead; but in six weeks or two months after, they come up again very strong, and will resist the severest frost; so that when all the common sort of Onion is destroyed by the cold, these will remain; which was the occasion

sion of their being so much propagated in the gardens near London, some years since; but their strong flavour renders them less esteemed than the other sort.

YOU must now sow all sorts of sallit herbs upon moderate hot-beds, either under frames, or arched over with hoops, where they may be covered with mats or cloths, to protect them from frost; otherwise they will be destroyed thereby, as soon as they appear above ground: but if you have many bell or hand glasses, you may sow those seeds under them, notwithstanding the two Cauliflower plants which are under each glass; for if the seeds are not sown too near the stems of the plants, or the salliting be not suffered to remain too long about them, it will not injure them; this being constantly practised by the gardeners near London, with good success.

SOME of your Colewort plants, which were late sown, should now be planted out where they are to remain for spring use, that they may succeed those which were planted out the former month.

YOUR Cauliflowers which were sown in May, will now begin to shew their heads: therefore you must diligently look over them two or three times a week, to break down
some

some of the inner leaves upon them, which will protect them from the frost or wet, both which, as also their being exposed to the sun, will change their colour, and cause them to be unsightly.

THE stems of your Broccoli plants should be earthed up, to protect them from frost; but you must be careful, that the earth be not drawn into the hearts of the plants, for that will spoil their heads if not destroy them.

TOWARD the end of this month you should cut down the leaves of some of your Artichokes close to the surface of the earth, and trench the ground between them, observing to lay a good ridge of earth over each row of plants, to protect them from frost; but by no means lay any new dung about them, as is by some unskilful persons too often practised, which renders the plants hard and woody in the spring, and causes them to produce small and ill-nourished heads; but where the ground wants amendment, you should bury some very rotten dung between the rows, when you trench the ground, which will greatly strengthen the plants. But if the season is likely to continue mild, this work had better be deferred a month later.

You

YOU may now sow some Radishes 'upon warm borders, to come early in the spring; and if you mix some Carrot seed with the Radish seed, if the Radishes should be destroyed, the Carrots may stand, and come early in the spring.

MAKE some moderate hot-beds to plant Mint and Tansey upon, that you may have both sorts for use by Christmas, when they are often required at the table; and these beds will continue to produce, until those in the open air come in.

YOU may also make hot-beds for Asparagus, when it is required to have it at table in December; but it is better to stay until December or January, before you make the beds, for the Asparagus will not be near so large nor well coloured, which is produced in the middle of winter, when there is little sun, as those which come in February and after.

YOUR Mushroom beds must be now carefully guarded from wet and frost, either with frames and glasses, or with thatch; for if the wet soaks into the beds, it will destroy them. If this be carefully observed, you may continue a crop of Mushrooms all the winter.

AT this time the dung of your Melon and Cucumber beds which were made the last spring,

spring, should be laid on the quarters of the Kitchen-garden, as should also the dung of the lay-stall, that it may be spread on the surface, ready to be dug into the ground, when the quarters are trenched.

YOU may now cut down the decayed stalks of Mint, Tarragon, Baulm, and other perennial rooted plants, whose stalks are annual; the beds should also be cleaned from weeds, and if a little rotten dung is spread over the beds, it will greatly amend them: the alleys also should now be dug, and the whole made clean.

WHERE there are beds of seedling Asparagus plants, which are intended for transplanting the succeeding spring, there should be some very rotten dung spread over them, toward the end of the month, when the haulm is decayed; this will prevent the frost from injuring the buds if the winter should prove severe, and be of great use to the plants.

WHERE there are reed fences in the kitchen-garden, they should now be tied anew with osiers, to prevent their being blown down by the strong winds which usually happen at this season, or soon after.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CABBAGES, Savoy, late Cauliflowers, some Artichokes, Carrots, Parsneps, Turneps, Onions, Leeks, Potatoes, Rocambole, Shallots, Beets, Skirrets, Scorzonera, Salsafy, Turnep-rooted and Black Spanish Radishes, and sometimes the common sort in mild seasons are now plenty; Celery, Endive, Cardoons, Fennochia, Chervil, Corn sallet, Rape, Radish, Mustard, Cresses, Lettuce, Parsley roots, Chard-Beet, Cauliflower, Broccoli, and all sorts of young Sallet herbs; and on warm borders some Cabbage-lettuce, Spinach, Coleworts, Borecole, Turnep-rooted Cabbage, Sorrel, Marigolds, Mushrooms, Sprouts, with Sage, Rosemary, Thyme, Winter-favory, Pot-marjoram, and many other aromatick plants.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

THE begining of this month you may prune Peach trees, Nectarines, Apricocks, and Vines; which is a much better time than to stay until the spring, as is the common practice; for if this work be performed early in autumn, the wounds will heal over be-

fore hard frost comes to injure the shoots, and so will be in no danger of decaying; and by cutting off all the useless branches at this season, and shortening those which are left, the trees will be the stronger, and the blossom buds will be better nourished: for when the shoots are left to their full length till spring, the buds upon the upper part of the branches will be larger and more turgid than those upon the lower part: the sap flowing more plentifully towards the ends of the shoots, the buds below upon those parts of the shoots, which are designed to be left in pruning, are thereby rendered weaker; besides, by pruning at this season, you may dig and clean your borders before winter; and so have less business to do in the spring, when your ground is to be cropt; so that the sooner this work is done, when the leaves begin to fall, the better.

You may also continue to prune Pears, Apples, and Plums, until the middle or latter end of the next month, according as the season proves favourable; but you should never perform this work in hard frosty weather, because then the shoots are subject to perish at the place where they are cut.

THIS

THIS month the Grapes in the vineyard should be gathered, which should always be done in dry weather, when there is no moisture on the vines ; you should also be careful not to put any unripe or decayed Grapes among the good ones, for those will spoil your wine.

THOSE Grapes which are designed to be preserved should now be cut, with a joint of the Vine to each bunch, and hung up in rows so as not to touch each other, in a warm room, where fires are pretty constantly kept in winter, in which places they will keep till February.

IF your soil be dry, this is the best season for transplanting all sorts of fruit trees ; and, if you provide yourself from the Nurseries, you may have much greater choice of plants at this season, than in the spring, when the Nurseries are generally cleared of the best trees : but in planting, you should not head down those trees which are designed for walls or espaliers until the spring ; their roots only should be pruned, and all the small fibres entirely cut off ; for if these are left on, they soon grow mouldy and perish, frequently injuring the new fibres which are sent out from the roots soon after planting ; and when the trees are planted, their branches should be

X

fastened

fore hard frost comes to injure the shoots, and so will be in no danger of decaying; and by cutting off all the useles branches at this season, and shortening those which are left, the trees will be the stronger, and the blossom buds will be better nourished: for when the shoots are left to their full length till spring, the buds upon the upper part of the branches will be larger and more turgid than those upon the lower part: the sap flowing more plentifully towards the ends of the shoots, the buds below upon those parts of the shoots, which are designed to be left in pruning, are thereby rendered weaker; besides, by pruning at this season, you may dig and clean your borders before winter; and so have less business to do in the spring, when your ground is to be cropt; so that the sooner this work is done, when the leaves begin to fall, the better.

You may also continue to prune Pears, Apples, and Plums, until the middle or latter end of the next month, according as the season proves favourable; but you should never perform this work in hard frosty weather, because then the shoots are subject to perish at the place where they are cut.

THIS

THIS month the Grapes in the vineyard should be gathered, which should always be done in dry weather, when there is no moisture on the vines ; you should also be careful not to put any unripe or decayed Grapes among the good ones, for those will spoil your wine.

THOSE Grapes which are designed to be preserved should now be cut, with a joint of the Vine to each bunch, and hung up in rows so as not to touch each other, in a warm room, where fires are pretty constantly kept in winter, in which places they will keep till February.

IF your soil be dry, this is the best season for transplanting all sorts of fruit trees ; and, if you provide yourself from the Nurseries, you may have much greater choice of plants at this season, than in the spring, when the Nurseries are generally cleared of the best trees : but in planting, you should not head down those trees which are designed for walls or espaliers until the spring ; their roots only should be pruned, and all the small fibres entirely cut off ; for if these are left on, they soon grow mouldy and perish, frequently injuring the new fibres which are sent out from the roots soon after planting ; and when the trees are planted, their branches should be

X

fastened

fastened to the wall, pale, espalier, or stakes, to prevent their being loosened by the winds; and some mulch should be laid upon the surface of the ground about their roots before winter, to prevent the frost from penetrating to them: but this mulch need not be laid about the trees until there is danger of hard frost; because, where the mulch is laid about them early and pretty thick, it will keep out the autumnal rains, and thereby do more hurt than good.

PLANT Gooseberries, Currants, Raspberries, and Strawberries, that they may take root before winter; for many of those which are planted at this season, will produce fruit the following summer; whereas when they are planted in spring, they have seldom strength enough to produce any (or at least very few) until the second year.

YOU may now transplant stocks of all kinds of fruit into the Nursery, to graft or bud the most generous kinds of fruit upon; in doing of which, if you observe to mulch the ground about their roots before winter to keep the frost out, it will be of great service to them.

YOUR old beds of Strawberries should now be dressed; in doing of which, you must clear
clear

Oct. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 307

clear them from weeds, and cut off their strings or runners close to the stems of the plants; then dig up the alleys, and after breaking the earth fine, you should spread a little over the beds between the plants, being careful not to bury them. You should also clear your Raspberries of old wood, and dig up the ground between the rows, which will make the place neat and greatly encourage the plants.

YOUR Currant bushes may now be pruned; and then their branches may be tied up with a withy, and the ground between them dug, which may be planted with Coleworts or Cabbage plants, to remain till spring, in which place they will sometimes abide the winter, when they are destroyed in more open situations; for the Currant bushes will prevent the frost from penetrating so deep into the ground, as it will where the ground is entirely clear: you may also prune Gooseberry bushes, and dig up the ground between them; and, where there is room, you may plant some of the like sort of plants, which will be taken off the ground in the spring, before the bushes put out their leaves.

PRESERVE the stones or kernels of such sorts of fruit as you intend to sow for to propagate for

stocks, in sand, until the season for sowing them; but you must place them out of the way of mice and rats, which will destroy them if they get to them; and, whenever you put any of them into the ground, the same caution must be observed; for these vermin will soon destroy your kernels, where they can come to them, if they are not prevented.

You should now gather all sorts of winter fruit; but this should be always done when the trees are perfectly dry, otherwise the fruit will not keep so well. Your choice sorts of winter Pears should be laid in an heap in a dry place, for about a fortnight or three weeks to sweat: after which time they should be carefully wiped, and each sort put up into a separate basket, and closely covered over to exclude the external air, in which method they will keep much better than where they are spread thin on shelves, and exposed to the air; and if some of the most choice sorts are each wrapped in white paper, it will prevent their touching each other and preserve them better.

FRUITS *now in Prime, or yet lasting.*

YOU have yet the Bloody, Malacoton, and some Catharine Peaches, Grapes, late Figs, Medlar, Services, Quinces, Black and White Bullace, Imperatrice Plum, with Walnuts, Hazle-nuts, and Almonds.

PEARS; the Doyenne or St. Michael, Beurre-rouge, Swiss Bergamot, Verte-longue, Long stalked Muscat, Monsieur Jean, Rousse-line, Green Sugar, Befidery, Marquis, Muscat Fleury, Befi de la Mote, Chat-brulé, Swan's egg, Crafan, St. Germain, Bessy Chaumontelle from a warm wall, with others of less note.

APPLES; Golden Rennet, Golden Pippin, Loan's Pearmain, Quince Apple, Red Rennet, Autumn Pearmain, Red Calville, White Calville, Rennet Grise, Royal Ruffet, Embroidered Apple, with some others of less note.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

THE begining of this month you should continue to trench the ground for planting out young stocks, to graft and bud your several sorts

of fruits upon ; as also to plant out flowering shrubs, and other wilderness trees. And about the middle of the month you may begin transplanting of them into quarters, placing them in rows, allowing them a proper distance according to their several sorts.

THIS month is the most proper season for transplanting all sorts of hardy trees, especially in dry soils ; for at this time they will soon push out new roots, which will be established before the drought of the succeeding summer, whereby the trees will be in much less danger of suffering than those transplanted in the spring. But you must be careful to stake all standard trees ; and those planted against walls, pales, or espaliers, should be fastened thereto, otherwise the wind will turn them aside, and thereby tear off the tender fibres, to the great injury of the trees.

IN dry weather carry dung into such parts of the Nursery where it is wanted, and spread it upon the surface of the ground round the stems of your young trees ; this will keep the frost out of the ground, and the rains of winter will wash in the salts to the roots of the trees ; and in the spring, when the ground is dug between the trees, the dung may be buried.

You

YOU may now put into beds the stones of Mussel plums for stocks, observing to cover them an inch thick with light earth; and then lay some light mulch over the surface of the bed, to keep out the frost, and prevent the mice from getting to them.

THIS is the proper season to sow Acorns, which will sprout if they are kept long out of the ground, and are thereby spoiled. You may also sow Beach-mast as soon as it is ripe; for this will not keep good long out of the ground. Hawthorns of all sorts, Yewberries, and Hips of Roses should now be sown, observing to cover the beds, as was directed for the Mussel plums: these seeds, sown at this season, will often come up the succeeding spring; whereas those sown in the spring, if they do grow, will not come up until the spring following: but many people dig a trench in the ground about a foot deep, and lay the Haws, Hips, and Holly berries therein, covering them over with earth pretty thick, and letting them remain one year; then they take them out, and sow them in beds the following October, and the plants will come up the spring after.

THIS is also the best season for sowing Maple seed; for those which are kept out of

the ground till spring rarely grow, at least not until the year after.

PRUNE all sorts of forest trees and flowering shrubs; in doing of which, you should always cut off the rude branches close to the stems, and not leave spurs, as is too often practised; there should also be care taken to leave a sufficient quantity of branches on the stems of young standard trees, to detain the sap for the augmentation of their trunks, otherwise they will not be strong enough to support their heads.

YOU may now make layers of Elms, Limes, and all other hardy trees and shrubs which shed their leaves in winter; the doing of which at this season, will greatly promote their taking root; for the moisture in winter will settle the ground about them, and prepare them for pushing out roots early in the spring.

TAKE off the layers of Elms, Limes, and other forest trees, or flowering shrubs, which were laid down the former year, then prune their roots, and plant them in rows in the Nursery. You may now plant out suckers of Lilacs, Roses, and such other flowering trees and shrubs, which are propagated this way, into the Nursery, where they may remain two years, to get strength, before they are placed where they are to remain.

PLANT

PLANT cutings of the several sorts of Honeysuckles, Laurels, Portugal Laurel, and other hardy trees and shrubs: these should be planted in a loamy soil, where they will succeed much better than in a light, rich, or sandy ground.

THIS month is a proper season for planting the cutings of Plane trees, Poplar trees, and Alders: these should be planted in moist ground; and, in making the cutings, a knot of the former year's wood should be preserved at the bottom of each: when this is observed, few of these cutings will fail.

YOU may also propagate the best sorts of Gooseberries and Currants from cutings, which, if properly chosen, and carefully planted at this season, will make good plants in one year.

LAY down the shoots of Laurustinus and Phillyrea this month: the former of these will be rooted well in one year, but the latter must remain two years before they are disturbed.

Work to be done in the FLOWER-GARDEN.

THE middle or latter end of this month you should finish planting all the sorts of flower roots, which you intend to put into the ground before Christmas; as Tulips, Anemonies, Ranuncu-

314 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Oct.

nunculuses, Crocuses, Jonquils, Hyacinths, Narcissuses, Bulbous Irises, Martagons, Orange Lily, and all such as have been kept above ground since their leaves decayed in summer; for if any of the roots are suffered to remain in the ground a short time after their leaves are decayed, they will push out fresh fibres, when it will be too late to take them up; or if they are removed, they must be immediately planted again; for if they are kept out of the ground, they will decay in a short time; so that such bulbous rooted flowers as were not taken up at the proper season, should not be now disturbed, lest thereby they should be destroyed; or if they do live, it will prevent their flowering the following summer.

You may now transplant most sorts of hardy tuberosse rooted or fibrous rooted plants, such as Hollyhocks, Canterbury-bells, French Honeyuckles, Columbines, Monks-hoods, Dazies, Bupthalmums, Polyanthus, Sweet Williams, London-pride, Campanulas, Asters, Golden-rods, Spiderwort, Asphodel or Kingspear, Pionies. Wall flowers, Thalictrums, Eryngiums, Thrift, Perennial Sun flowers, Great Bluebottle, tuberosse rooted Irises, Jaceas, Double Feverfew, Double Camomile, Oxeye Dazie, Doronicum, Cirsiums, Cassida
or

Oct. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 315

or Skullcap, Everlasting Pea, Perennial Astragaluses, Hardy Apocynums, Perennial Poppy, Yellow and Tangier Fumitaries, Bean Caper, Foxgloves, Horned Poppy, Perennial Navelwort, Lychnideas, Candy Alysson, Tree Primrose, Obeliscotheca or Dwarf Sun flower, Perennial Geraniums, St Peter's-wort, Violets, Honesty or Satten flower, Globe Ranunculus, Lyfimachias, Dwarf Cistuses, double and single Rose-campion, Ragged Robin, Monardas, Ruyfchiana, Double Pilewort, with many other sorts, which are intended to be planted in the borders of the flower-garden; observing to intermix them in such a manner, that there may be a succession of flowers preserved throughout the season.

CLEANSE all the borders of the flower-garden from weeds; and if you did not dig them the former month, it must now be done; observing to renew them with fresh earth, or some very rotten dung, in the manner directed in the former month. You may also continue to plant Box-edgings to borders where they are wanted, and repair those which are decayed; this may be done any time before the frost sets in so as to freeze the ground.

THOSE borders which were dug and planted the begining of September, should
now

now be raked over again, which will destroy all young weeds, and make the borders clean and handsome all the winter season.

Y O U R beds of seedling Hyacinths, Tulips, Fritillarias, and other bulbous rooted flowers, which have remained in the ground all the year, must now be carefully cleared from weeds, and some fresh rich earth sifted over the beds, half an inch thick, which will preserve the roots from frost, and greatly strengthen them.

T H E pots and boxes of seedling flowers should now be removed out of their shady situation, where they have remained during the heat of summer and autumn, and placed in a warmer position, where they may enjoy as much of the benefit of the sun as possible, and be screened from cold winds; they should also be cleaned from weeds: in doing of this, there must be great care taken not to draw the bulbs out of the ground; for as these roots are very small, so they are easily drawn out with the roots of the weeds, especially if the weeds are large, or have taken deep root; and after this is done, they should have a little fresh earth sifted over them; but this must not be laid too thick, lest the roots should be buried so deep as to rot in the ground.

THE end of this month you should remove your pots of choice Carnations under cover, where they may be defended from violent rains, snow, and severe frost, all which are enemies to these flowers: therefore, if you have planted them in small halfpenny pots, as was directed in the month of August, they may be placed very close together, in a garden frame, or upon a bed arched over with hoops, that they may be covered with mats in bad weather; but in mild dry weather they cannot have too much air; but these pots should be plunged either into the ground, or in rotten tan up to their rims, to prevent the frost from penetrating quite through them to the roots of the plants.

YOUR pots of choice Auriculas should have their decayed leaves taken off, and the pots must be laid on one side or placed under cover, to prevent their receiving too much wet, which will be apt to rot them: but they will endure cold very well.

YOU may now remove most sorts of flowering shrubs and trees; as Roses, Honeysuckles, Spanish Broom, Cytisuses, Laburnums, Althæa frutex, Spiræas, Gelder Rose, Lilacs, Scorpion Sena, Bladder Sena, Virgins Bower, Double flowering Peach, Almonds, Double flower-

flowering Cherry, Bird Cherry, Acacia, Scarlet Horse Chestnut, Flowering Maple, Syringa, Jasmines, Catalpa, Mezereons, Upright Honeysuckle, Trumpet Honeysuckle, Flowering Raspberry, Double Bramble, Cockspur Hawthorn, Double Hawthorn, Shrub Cinquefoil, Cornelian Cherry, Quick-beam, Privet, Cherry Plum, Sumach, Coccygia, Sea Buckthorn, Bladder-nut, Arbutus, Laurustinus, Rock Rose, Jerusalem Sage, Glastonbury thorn, Tamarisks, &c. which, if planted at this season, will take root before winter, whereby they will be in less danger of suffering from drought the following spring, and many of them will flower the next summer; whereas those which are removed in the spring will require to be constantly watered in dry weather, and rarely flower the same year: but those shrubs which are planted at this season, must have some mulch laid upon the surface of the ground about their stems in winter, to prevent the frost from penetrating the earth to their roots: but this should not be done till the frost comes on; before which time the mulch will do more harm than good, by preventing the rain from entering the ground to their roots.

CLEAN the walks and lawns near your wildernesses of the leaves which have fallen from the trees, for if they are suffered to rot upon the grass, they will greatly injure it; and if they remain upon gravel walks to rot, they will discolour the gravel, and render it unsightly: and where you have large gravel walks, which are seldom used in winter, you may now break them up, and lay them in ridges, which will prevent weeds and moss from growing thereon in winter, and preserve the gravel fresh: but this is only to be practised where the walks are not used during the winter season, or where there is not sufficient help allowed to roll them constantly.

PRUNE all sorts of flowering shrubs, as Roses, Honeysuckles, Spiræas, &c. taking off all suckers which come from their roots, which, if suffered to remain, will starve the old plants and prevent their flowering; the Lilac in particular, which send forth great numbers of suckers from their roots, if they are not annually taken off, will spread over the ground to a great distance, and make a thicket; but will not flower near so well, as when the trees are kept clear and single; these suckers, if wanted, may be planted in the nursery; where, in two or three years time, they will get strength

strength enough to be transplanted where they are to remain.

WHERE you have any ground which is designed to be laid out for pleasure, either in a flower-garden or wilderness, which you cannot get ready for planting before the spring, you should lose no time at this season in preparing of it, that it may be exposed to the frost in winter, which will mellow it; besides, if the frost should continue long, it may prevent your working till the season be too far spent for planting, in the spring whereby a whole season will be lost.

AT this season you may plant some cuttings of the double Chrysanthemums, both white and yellow, in pots filled with good earth, and placed in a shady situation, observing to water them frequently, if the season proves dry: these cuttings will soon take root; and, if they are placed under a common frame, where they may be protected from frost in winter, and have as much free air as possible in mild weather, the plants will be strong enough by the spring to plant in the borders of the flower-garden; and by this method you will always have them with double flowers, and no single ones among them.

IN this month you should put the bulbous roots of Tulips, Hyacinths, Jonquils, Narcissuses, &c. upon glasses filled with water, for to flower in rooms early in the spring: these glasses should be placed where they may have as much free air as possible while the weather continues mild, for if they are kept in close rooms, their leaves and stalks will be drawn up very weak, whereby their flower stalks will be rendered too weak to flower as they should do; so that they should not be set into the rooms, until their flowers are almost ready to open: but they must not be exposed to the frost, or bad weather after they begin to put out their leaves; so that if they are placed near the windows of a Green-house where they may have free air in mild weather, and be screened from cold, they will produce strong flowers. The glasses for this purpose, are now well contrived and so generally known, as to render their description here unnecessary.

Plants now in Flower in the PLEASURE
GARDEN.

SEVERAL sorts of Starworts (and in open mild seasons there still continue Africans, French Marigolds, Marvel of Peru, Balfamine, Sweet-
Y smelling

smelling Reseda, Amaranthus Tricolor and Cockscomb, Amaranthoides, with white and purple flowers, Palma Christi, Diamond Ficoides, and some other tender annual plants), four or five sorts of Golden-rod, Autumnal Crocuses, Yellow Autumnal Narcissus, Cyclamens, Colchicums, China Pinks, Sweet Sultans, Polyanthus, Auriculas, Three coloured Violets or Hearts ease, China Starwort, Oriental Persicaria, Chrysanthemum Creticum, Leucanthemums, Linarias, Stock-gilliflowers, Alkekengi, Asteriscus, Tuberoses, Guernsey Lily, Belladonna Lily, Obeliscotheca or Dwarf Sun flower, Heliotropium, Oriental Buglos, American Dogbane with flowers like the Lily of the Valley, Snapdragon, Saffron, Bastard Saffron, Double Feverfew, Bupthalmums, Convolvuluses, Sweet-scented Peas, Lupines, Venus Looking-glass, Venus Navelwort, Double Thorn apple, Jaceas, Jacobæas, Hawkweeds, some single Anemonies, Sun flowers, Indian Scabious, broad-leaved Lychnidea, Trachelium, Dianthera, Eupatoriums, Alysson fruticosum, Moldavicas, Oriental Sage, Helenias, Honeywort, Autumnal Gentian, Old Man's Head Pink, several sorts of Lychnis, Double Sopewort, Tradescants Spiderwort, Commelina, Chelone, some sorts of Scrophularia,

laria, Tobacco, Aconite with large blue flowers, wholesome Wolffbane, Campanula patula, with some others.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

ARBUTUS, or the Strawberry tree, late flowering Honeysuckle, Evergreen Honeysuckle, Althæa frutex, Passion flower, Cytisus lunatus, Ketmia Syriaca, Laurustinuses, Monthly rose, Musk rose, Shrub Cinquefoil, Flowering Raspberry, Male Cistus, Phlomis, Hamamelis, Double Pomgranate, Scorpion Sena, Agnus Castus, Pyracantha in fruit, Euonymus or Spindle tree in fruit, Groundsel tree, several sorts of Sumach, Tamarisk, Eastern Bladder Sena, Bignonia or Trumpet flower, Hydrangea, Itea, Clethra, Spanish broom, Luca broom, Red Spiræa, White American Spiræa, Galeopsis frutescens, American trailing Arbutus, Shrubby St. John'swort, with some others.

Medicinal Plants which may now be gathered for Use.

CALAMUS Aromaticus Roots, Winter Cherry, Wholsome Wolffbane roots, Arum roots, Asarabacca roots, Berberry fruit, Saffron, Beet root, Eryngo root, Ashtree seed, Henbane root and seed, Juniper-berries, Lovage
Y 2 feed,

324 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Oct.

feed, Valerian root, Savin, Sopewort root, Sea Lavender root, Scorzonera root, Skirret root.

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE,
and STOVE.*

THE begining of this month, if it was not done in the former, you should remove your Orange trees into the green-house, observing, as hath already been directed, to do it in a dry day; as also to clean their heads and stems before they are housed, and stir the earth on the top of the tubs, adding a little very rotten neat's dung thereto; which will refresh the trees, and prevent moss from growing in the tubs or pots.

YOU must now also carry into the conservatory your tender Geraniums, Double Indian Nasturtium, Spanish Jasmines, Azorian Jasmines, Yellow Indian Jasmines, Ficoidefes, Sedums, Cotyledons, Amber tree, Sorrel tree, Malabar Nut, Leonurus, Hermannias, Diosma, Celastrus Africanus, Phylica, Lotus Sancti Jacobi, striped and spotted Aloes, Kleinias, Arctotufes, Canary Campanula, Sisyrrinchiums, Elichrysums, Clutia, Arbor Molle, Chironia, Lyciums, Watsonia, Ixia, African Wood sorrel, Gladiolus Indicus, Indian flowering Reed, Lentiscus,

Lentiscus, Solanums, Alkekengi frutescens, Persian Cyclamen, African King's spear, with many other sorts, which are hardy enough to remain abroad until morning frosts begin to come on, when they should be removed into shelter; but these must have as much free air as possible, when they are in the house during the continuance of mild days; for if they are too closely shut up, when they are first housed, their leaves will decay, and fall off; they must also be frequently refreshed with water, and the decayed leaves constantly picked off.

IF you have not already renewed your bark beds in the stove, it must now be no longer deferred; for the cold increasing will check your tender exoticks, if they are not placed into new beds; in doing of which, you must be very careful not to plunge the pots into the bark until it begins to warm; nor should they be put into the bark, if it be too hot; for if the roots of the plants are scorched with the heat, they rarely recover again. You must also observe to wash the leaves and stems of such plants as have contracted any filth, or that are infested with insects; otherwise they will spread themselves over whatever plants are placed near them, and be very injurious to them.

TOWARD the latter end of the month you should remove your Myrtles, Oleanders, Cytisuses, Dorias, Gum Cistus, Common Aloc, Candytuft tree, Osteospermum, Perennial Asteriscus, Wormwood tree, Royenias, Olives, Tetragonocarpos, Large Magnolia, Indian Bay, African Tansey, Heliotropiums, Cliffortia, Wackendorfia, Shrubby Aster, and other hardy exotick plants, into the green-house; at which time you should put all the plants into the order they are to remain during the winter, observing (if you have room in the green-house) to place them in such a manner, that the branches of the plants may not interfere with each other, but that their heads may stand single, and the air freely pass between them.

YOUR Ananas or Pine apples, which are to fruit the next season, must now be removed out of the bark bed, where they have remained the last summer, and placed into the bark bed in the stove, that they may enjoy the heat; but you must observe to refresh them frequently with water, which should be placed in the stove twenty-four hours before it be used, that it may acquire a proportionable warmth with the air of the house; for if you permit the fibres of the plants to grow dry,
it

it will weaken the plants, and cause many of your last year's crowns and off-sets to fruit, which were not designed for fruiting the following year; and so consequently their fruit will be very small, and of little value; but on the other hand, there must be great care taken, not to give them too much water, nor to repeat it too often, for much wet at this season will rot their tender roots.

THE begining of this month you must carry into the stove such plants as were removed abroad in the summer, as the American Viburnums, Acacias, Apocynums, Indian flowering Reeds, Coral tree, Lotus Sancti Jacobi, African Aloes, Torch thistles, Malpighias, Tithymals, Hemanthus, Phillyrea Capensis, Indian Figs, Volkhameria, Proteas, Fiddle Wood, Turnera, Solanums, Ketmia Sinensis, and such other plants as will bear to be exposed in summer: these should be first placed in the green-house for a fortnight, where they may have free air; but toward the middle of the month they must be placed in the stove, where they are to remain during the winter.

TOWARD the end of the month, as you find the nights to grow cold, you must begin to make fires in the stoves; but this must be done with caution; for if you make the heat

328 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Oct.

too great, it will cause the plants to shoot, whereby they will be weakened; and the season being too far advanced to permit their shoots to grow strong, their leaves will often decay, and fall off. You must also observe to refresh your plants with water pretty often; for when you begin to make fires, it will dry the air of the house, and occasion the plants to perspire more freely than before, whereby they will require more water; but you must not give it to them in large quantities, but rather frequently, and no more than is sufficient to reach the fibres of the plants which are toward the bottom of the pots, at each time. When you observe the leaves of any plants decay, you should pick them off, and keep the stove constantly clear from any fallen leaves, cobwebs, or any other filth; which not only renders the house neat, but is very necessary to preserve your plants in health.

*Plants now in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

THE Scarlet flowering Geranium, Geranium with an Asarabacca leaf, Ficoideuses of several sorts, Cotyledons, Chrysanthemums, Spanish Jasmine, Arabian Jasmine, Ilex-leaved Jasmine,

mine, Indian yellow Jasmine, Arctotufes, Persian Cyclamens, Aloes of many kinds, Canary Campanula, Cassia Bahamensis, Sensitive and Humble Plants, Guernsey Lily, Belladonna Lily, Three leaved Passion flower, Leonurus, Euphorbium Nerii folio, Alcea Groffulariæ folio, Double flowering Myrtle, Yucca Indica, Polygala arborescens, Myrto-Cistus, Papaya, Ketmia femine Moschato, Senecio folio retuso, Opuntias, Plumeria, Granadillas, Turneras, Sherardias, Malpighia, Sena Spuria, Hellebore with purple flowers, Solanums, Conyzas, Martynia, Clutias, Milleria, Camara's, Rauwolfia, Maranta, Ginger, Costus, Salvia Africana, Arum caulescens, Arum scandens, Spigelia, Diosma, Polyanthes, Crinum, Phytolacca, Piercea, Kleinias, Crassulas, African King's spear, Philyca, Pancratiun, Bassella, Plumbago, Fabagos, Acacias, Hæmanthus, Double Oleander, Lotus Sancti Jacobi, branching After from the Cape of Good Hope with blue flowers, Canary Lavender, Caltha Africana Croci foliis, with some others.



NOVEMBER.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

THE ground between your Artichokes must now be trenched, observing to lay a large ridge of earth over the roots, equally on their sides and tops, to prevent their being injured by frost, which will preserve them much better than long dung, which is by some ignorant persons used for that purpose. But before this is done, the plants should be cut off quite close to the surface of the ground, unless where there are some very strong plants which are knit for fruit, which may be tied up with a small hay-band, and the earth laid up close to them, which will preserve them from frost, unless it be very severe, in which case it will be proper to cover them

them over with a little dry litter, which should always be taken off again when the weather is mild. By this method you may have some Artichokes all the winter: but if the season continues mild, this work should be deferred to the end of this month, or the beginning of the next: for when they are earthed too early, they are apt to shoot through the ridges of earth soon after, and are then in danger of being cut off by frost; so that, where there is but a small quantity, which may be earthed in a little time, it should be done as late in the season as the mild weather will permit; but in those gardens where there are great quantities, they must begin earlier, lest the frost should set in before they have finished. These ridges of earth will be sufficient to preserve the Artichokes in all common winters; but if it happens to be a very severe winter, it will be proper to lay straw, long dung, peas haulm, or tanners bark, over the ridges, which if either of these coverings is laid pretty thick, will intirely secure them from being destroyed in the greatest frost, but this covering should be removed as soon as the severe frost is over.

Y O U R Asparagus beds, which were not dressed the last month, should not be deferred any longer than the beginning of this; therefore

fore you must cut down the haulm, and hoe the weeds from off the beds into the alleys, where they must be buried; and the earth of the alleys should be spread over the beds, in the manner directed in the former month.

IN mild weather you must let your Cauliflower and Lettuce plants, which are under glasses, or in frames, have as much free air as possible, by setting off the glasses every day in dry weather; and, in very wet weather, the glasses should be kept over them; but they must be raised on one side with props, to let in as much free air as possible; for they should not receive too much wet at this season, lest it should cause them to rot: nor must they be too closely covered, lest they draw up too weak, which will endanger them, if there should afterwards be much frosty weather, with dark days, when they will require to be closely covered.

Y o u must also sow Peas, and plant Beans, in dry weather, to succeed those which were planted the former month; and you should draw some earth to the stems of those which are come up, which will preserve them from being injured by the frost.

Sow all sorts of Sallet herbs upon moderate hot-beds, as Lettuce, Cresses, Mustard, Rape,

Nov. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 333

Rape, Radish, Turnep, &c. that the table may be constantly furnished with them; and in dry weather take up your Endive which is full grown, and lay it into trenches to blanch, observing always to place it horizontally on the sides of the ridges, that the wet may run off, otherwise it would rot the plants: you must also earth up your Celery to blanch it, being careful not to bury the heart of the plants; but this must always be done in dry weather.

YOU should now dung and trench the ground which is designed for early crops, laying it in ridges until the time that you make use of it; which will be of great service to refresh and sweeten the ground: besides, by getting as much of this work performed as you can conveniently, it will put you forward in the spring, when many other works will require to be done.

THE beginning of this month you should sow some Carrots and Radishes on warm borders, near pales and hedges, to come early in the spring, provided you did not perform it the latter end of the last month; which if you did, you may defer the doing of it until the middle of this, whereby you will have a greater chance of succeeding.

YOUR

YOUR Spinach, Onions, and other crops which were sown in July and August, must be constantly kept clear from weeds; which, if permitted to remain at this season, will overspread the crops, and, by detaining the moisture, cause them to rot.

PICK all decayed leaves from off your Cauliflower plants, and draw some earth up to the stems of those which are under bell or hand glasses, being careful that you do not draw the earth into the heart of the plants, for that will destroy them.

YOU may now make hot-beds for Asparagus to come in at Christmas; but these will not produce so large nor so many heads as those beds which are made the beginning of January, nor will the Asparagus be near so well coloured: so that it is only fit for persons of curiosity to make beds at this season.

TAKE up the roots of Carrots, Parsneps, Potatoes, Beets, Salsafy, Scorzonera, large rooted Parsley, &c. toward the end of this month, and lay them in sand, in a place where they may be defended from frost and wet, which are many times injurious to them; and where this is neglected, if the ground should be frozen up for any continuance, there will be no possibility of getting the roots out
of

of the ground ; whereby the kitchen cannot be supplied with these things, until the frost is out of the ground again.

I F this month should prove dry and frosty, you must carry dung into the quarters of the kitchen-garden, that it may be ready when you want to dig the ground, which will forward your affairs greatly. The not observing of this many times causes a great hurry of business together, which should be avoided as much as possible ; because, whenever this happens, either some things are intirely neglected, or are slighted over too carelessly.

Y O U must now fresh tie your reed hedges with osiers, if they were not done in the former month ; otherwise the strong winds which usually happen at this season, will tear them from the stakes, and break the reeds, which will render it troublesome to repair them.

W H E R E there are hot-beds either for Sal-
leting, Cucumbers, or any other purpose, they must be carefully attended at this season ; for the nights are now long and cold, and the days either frosty, wet, or foggy, so that little air can be given to the beds ; whereby the plants often grow mouldy, and rot off ; and the heat of the beds is often greatly abated either by rain or snow, which renders it very difficult to manage hot beds at this season.

T H E

336 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Nov.

THE autumnal Cauliflowers should now be carefully looked over two or three times a week, to break down the leaves over those whose heads appear, to guard them from wet and morning frosts, which will discolour those which are exposed thereto.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CABBAGES, Savoy, Cauliflowers which were sown in May, Browncole or Borecole, some late Artichokes, Red Cabbages, Spinach, Sprouts of Cabbages, Onions, Leeks, Garlick, Rocambole, Shallots, Turneps, Beets, Carrots, Parsneps, Skirrets, Salsafy, Potatoes, Scorzonera, Horse-radish, Jerusalem Artichokes, Black and White Spanish Radishes, large rooted Parsley, Sage, Coleworts, Mushrooms, and, on the hot-beds, some Asparagus, &c.

FOR sallets; Lettuce, Cresses, Turnep, Mustard, Corn sallet, Coriander, Burnet, and other small herbs from the hot-bed, or warm borders near walls; as also Endive, Celery, and, if the season is mild, some brown, Dutch, and common Cabbage-lettuce.

FOR soups; Beets, Cardoons, Thyme, Celery, Chervil, Marigold, Winter-savory, Hyssop,

Hyssop, Sorrel, Parsley, Pot-marjoram, with some others.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN.

IF the season is mild, you may still prune Peach trees, Nectarines, Apricocks, Pear-trees, Apple trees, Vines, and other kinds of fruit trees, either against walls, espaliers, or standards; but it is not proper to do it too late in the month, especially if the season is inclinable to hard frost and snow, particularly the tender kinds of stone fruit, because great snows, succeeded by severe frost, sometimes hurt the branches of the trees when the wounds are fresh.

YOU must now divest your fig trees of all their late fruit, which, if left on, will rot and infect the tender branches; then nail the shoots of the trees close to the wall, whereby they will be protected from the injuries of the frost much better than if they were left at a distance from the wall. You may also place some pannels of reeds before them, if the frost should be very severe in winter; which will preserve the young fruiting branches from being killed, and cause the fruit to come out much earlier the following spring than those which are

left open; and those fig trees which grow against espaliers, should be loosened, and their branches may be tied together, and covered with hay-bands, straw, or peas haulm, to protect them from frost; by which management a good crop of figs may be constantly obtained.

SUCH fruit trees as were planted the former month for standards should be carefully staked, and those against walls and espaliers must be fastened thereto, to prevent their being displaced by the violence of the wind, whereby their new fibres, which have been sent forth from their roots since they were planted, would be destroyed, to the great prejudice of the trees. You must also observe to lay some mulch upon the surface of the ground, about their roots (where it has not been done already), to prevent the frost from penetrating the ground to the roots of the trees.

THE beginning of this month you may transplant fruit trees upon a warm dry soil, if the weather is mild; but it would have been better done the former month, because the ground being then warm, the trees put out fibres very soon after planting, which strengthens them to endure the cold; whereas those which are late planted, rarely take fresh rooting until the spring.

PLANT

PLANT Gooseberries, Raspberries, Strawberries, and Currants, if the weather is mild; and dig between the rows of Gooseberries and Currants which were formerly planted, to clear the ground from weeds; but you should first prune the trees, that there may be no litter upon the ground afterwards; and if you want ground for kitchen herbs, you may plant some Coleworts for spring use between them.

CLEAR your Strawberry beds from weeds and runners, and dig up the alleys between the beds, spreading a little of the earth between the plants upon the beds, which will greatly strengthen them; but if the ground be very poor, it will be proper to spread a little very rotten dung over the beds, which will be very serviceable to them.

IF you have any late fruits still remaining upon the trees, you must gather them the first dry day; for if they are suffered to hang longer upon the trees, they will be in danger of perishing by frost and wet: and your fine winter Pears and Apples, which were gathered the last month, must now be packed up close in baskets, which should have double papers at their bottom, and round their sides, and when the fruit is well placed therein, and doubly papered over them, there should be a good covering

of wheat straw, and placed where neither the frost nor too much air can get to them, otherwise they are liable to perish in a short time.

Fruits in Prime, or yet lasting.

PEARS; Sucre-vert, La Chasserie, La Marquise, Chat-brulé, Le Besidery, Crasane or Bergamot Crasane, Martin Sec, l'Amadote, Louise-bonne, Colmar, St. German, Bezy de Chaumontelle, Petin Oin, Virgouleuse, Spanish Boncretien, Ambrette, with some others.

APPLES; Rennette Grise, Aromatic Pippin, Nonpareil, Golden Pippin, Calville rouge, Calville blanc, Courpendu, Fenouillette, Herefordshire Pearmain, Holland Pippin, French Pippin, Kentish Pippin, Harvey-apple, Pile's Ruffet, Golden Ruffet, Wheeler's Ruffet, Winter Queening, Pear Ruffet, with some others of less note.

BULLACE, Chestnuts, Hazlenuts, Walnuts, Medlars, Services, Almonds, with some late Grapes.

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

IF in the former month you could not finish transplanting all your trees in the nursery, you
may

Nov. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 341

may now complete it ; but this should be done the begining of the month, that the new fibres may be pushed out before winter ; for all such trees as are planted at the end of this month, or in the two following months, seldom put out roots until the spring: for the ground being now rendered cold, vegetation is at a stand, till the warmth of the spring puts the juices into motion again.

YOU must now lay some mulch upon the surface of the ground, about the stems of the new planted trees, to prevent the frost from penetrating to their roots, which often destroys the young fibres, and greatly weakens the trees.

CONTINUE to carry dung into such parts of your nursery as require it, when it is dry weather, and spread it upon the surface of the ground between the trees, that the rain in winter may wash the salts into the ground, before it is dug up in the spring.

WHERE you intend to make new plantations in the spring, you should now prepare your ground by trenching of it well, and laying it in ridges, that the frost may mellow it.

FASTEN all your new planted trees with stakes, &c. that the strong winds of this season may not displace them.

WHERE you have any hardy exotick trees or shrubs in pots, you should now plunge the pots either into the earth, or some old tan, in a warm situation, to prevent the frost from freezing the roots, through the sides of the pots, which often is destructive to them while they are young.

THE beds of young seedling exotick trees and shrubs must be now protected from severe frost, either by arching of them over with hoops and covering of them with mats, when the frost is severe, or by laying some Peas haulm, or other light covering over them; but these must not continue on in mild weather.

Work to be done in the FLOWER-GARDEN.

THE begining of this month you must finish planting your bulbous rooted flowers, which are designed for planting before Christmas; for if they are set late in the month, there will not be time enough for them to strike root before the frost comes on, which will prevent them, so that they will be in danger of being destroyed.

YOUR boxes and pots of seedling bulbous rooted flowers must now be placed in a warm situation,

situation, where they may enjoy the sun, and be screened from cold winds.

CUT down the stalks of such late flowering plants as now begin to decay, and rake over the borders of the pleasure-garden, to stir the surface of the ground, which will prevent weeds and moss from growing thereon; but you should be very careful not to stir the earth too deep, lest you injure the roots which are under ground.

IF the season continues mild, you may yet transplant Peonies, Monk's hood, flag-leaved Irises, and most other knobbed rooted plants, as also some Lychnises, Veronicas, Canterbury-bells, London-pride, Fraxinella, Gentianella, yellow Gentian, late flowering Starworts and Golden-rods, Wall-flowers, French Honey-suckle, Honesty, double Rocket, double Rose Campion, and other hardy fibrous rooted plants; though it were better if done the former month; because, if the frost should set in soon after they are planted, it will prevent their taking root.

THE beds of seedling bulbous rooted flowers, which were not removed the last season, should be raked over, to prevent weeds and moss from growing thereon; and some fresh earth should be spread over their surface, to

prevent the frost from injuring the roots ; and when there is danger of very severe frost, if the beds are covered over with some rotten tan, it will prevent the frost from penetrating deep into the ground.

YOUR pots of choice Auriculas and Carnations must be sheltered from hard rains, frost, and snow, by coverings either of mats or cloths ; but where there is not conveniency for this, the pots should be laid down on one side, to prevent the moisture from lodging in the pots, which often rots them.

YOU may yet transplant Roses, Lilacs, Syringas, Jasmines, Laburnums, Spiræa frutex, Honeyfuckles, Hypericum frutex, Coluteas, and most other hardy flowering shrubs, if the soil be dry where they are to be planted, otherwise it is better to defer it till February.

TURN your composts which have been prepared for pots or borders, that the parts may be equally mixed, and may receive the benefit of air and frost, to sweeten them, and render them looser. You should also prepare fresh composts at this season, that you may not want a supply the following year, it being the better way to have three or four stocks under each other, that they may lie the longer before they are used ; for if the parts are not well mixed,
the

Nov. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 345

the plants will not thrive so well which are planted therein.

TOWARD the latter end of this month, if the season should prove wet or frosty, you must arch your beds of choice Anemonies, Ranunculuses, and Hyacinths, with hoops, that they may be covered with mats or cloths, to prevent the frost from penetrating the ground to the roots, and to keep off too large quantities of rain and snow, which if permitted to soak into the beds, will cause the roots to rot in the spring.

YOUR wilderness quarters should now be trimmed, and the ground dug between the trees, which will render it neat, and encourage the growth of the trees; but if you have any flower roots growing therein, you must be careful not to destroy them in digging.

IN very wet or frosty weather, when little work can be done in the garden, you should prepare your seeds ready for sowing in the spring, and make a quantity of numbers to label your choice flowers; and be sure to prepare your tools of all sorts, that they may be ready for use when the weather is favourable.

ROLL and pole your grass well at this season, for the ground being well moistened, the
roller

346 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Nov.

roller will press the ground close, which will be a great advantage to the sward.

KEEP your gravel walks clean from weeds and moss, for at this season the moss will spread greatly, so will be difficult to eradicate in the spring.

Plants in flower in the open Air.

SOME sorts of Starworts, two or three sorts of Golden-rods, annual Stock-gilliflower, Double Colchicum, Saffron, Hearts-ease or Pansies, three or four sorts of Perennial Sun-flowers, Plumbago or Leadwort, Indian Scabious, Iron coloured Fox-glove, Old Man's head Pink, Antirrhinum, Tansey-leaved Ox-eye; and, if the season is mild, some single Anemonies, and Polyanthus Narcissus, where they were not removed the last summer; as also the purple Ragwort, Eupatoriums, Clinopodiums, and Helenias.

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

ARBUTUS, or Strawberry tree with flowers and ripe fruit, Laurustinus, Musk-rose, Passion flower, Clematis Boetica, Cytisus lunatus, Genista spinosa, and, in mild seasons, the Eastern Colutea,

Nov. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 347.

Colutea, Glastenbury Thorn, Sena, Diervilla, Pyracantha, and Euonymus in fruit.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

CALAMUS Aromaticus roots, Iris roots, Asparagus roots, Swallow-wort roots, Beet roots, Elecampane roots, Eryngo roots, Fennel roots, Henbane root, Savin, Scorzonera root, Skirret root, Tormentil root.

Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE and STOVE.

THE begining of this month you must remove into the green-house such hardy exotick plants as have been permitted to remain abroad till this time; and now you should place all your plants in the green-house in the order you intend they shall remain all the winter; in doing of which you should observe to place the tallest plants backward, and to let them slope down gradually toward the front; but do not place them so near, that their branches may interfere; for that would greatly injure their heads.

IN

I N mild weather you should let your hardy exotick plants have as much free air as possible; by opening the glasses every day; and you must look over them every day constantly, to see which of them want water for there are some sorts of plants which will require to be watered three or four times in a week, when many others do not require it above once; so that you should not water them all at the same time, but only those which you see require it: you should also observe to do it in a morning, that the damp may pass off before the windows are close shut in the evening, otherwise it will injure your plants.

Y o u must frequently pick off all decayed leaves from your plants, and not permit them to fall among your pots and tubs, which will make a litter in the house, and, as they rot, will infect the air, which being imbibed by the plants, will cause them to change the verdure of their leaves to a pale sickly complexion.

A s the cold advances, you must increase your fires in the stove proportionably, being careful not to over-heat the air, lest you cause the plants to shoot too freely, which is injurious to them at this season; nor should you suffer the air to be too cold, lest their leaves decay and fall off, and the extreme parts of
the

the plants perish: you must also observe to water the plants as often as you perceive they require it, which will be proportionable to the heat of the air; but the water should be placed in the stove eighteen or twenty hours before it is used, that it may acquire a proportionable heat to the air of the house; and never give it in too great quantities; for it is much the better method to water your plants often and sparingly, than to over-water them at this season.

YOU must constantly pick off all decayed leaves from the tender plants in the stove, and clean their leaves and stems from filth, which they are very subject to contract at this season; as also from insects, which often infest them, especially the Coffee tree, which will require to be frequently cleaned.

YOUR Anana, or Pine apple plants, must not be suffered to remain longer in the bark bed in the open air than the beginning of the month, at which time they should be removed into the stove, observing to do it in a warm day, and place them where they may have a great share of heat, without which they seldom produce fruit: this is only to be understood of such as are kept in a dry stove in winter; for where there is a tan bed in the stove,

350 *The Gardeners Kalendar.* Nov.

stove, the plants must be placed therein before this time.

*Plants now in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

SEVERAL sorts of Aloes, some Geraniums, Sedum arborescens, Cotyledons, Arctotufes, Phylica, Leonurus two sorts, Canary Campanula, Candytuft tree, Yellow Indian Jasmine, Indian Nasturtium with a double flower, Spanish Jasmine, American Viburnums, Ilex leaved Jasmine, Senecio folio retuso, large Blue Virginian Star-wort, double-flowered Myrtle, Cassia Bahamensis, Papaw tree, Chrysanthemum arborescens, Doria Afrina Jacobææ folio, Perennial Asteriscus, Canary Base-horehound, Indian Flowering Reed, Malpighia mali punici facie, Kleinas, Sensitive Plants, Azorian Jasmine, Clusia, Tetragonocarpos, several sorts of Ficoides, Crassulas, Guajava, Poinciana, Crinum, Melocactus minor, Saururus, Arum scandens, Turnera, African shrubby Sage with blue Flowers, Persian Cyclamen, African Asphodel, Solidago, Elichrysums, Teucrium Boeticum, Heliotropium Canariense, Apocynums, Leucanthemum Canariense, Oriental Ptar-mica, Chrysocoma, Stœchas with sawed leaves, Grana-

Nov. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 351

Granadillas, Alcæa Africana arborefcens, Shrub-
by Heliotrope from Peru, branching China
Starwort, Crinum with blue umbellated flowers,
African Wood Sorrel with large purple Flow-
ers, Anthericums, Shrubby Phytolacca from
Peru, Adhatoda or Snap tree, Hermannias,
Diosma, Mexican Clary, Guernsey Lily, Bel-
ladonna Lily, with some others.



DECEMBER



DECEMBER.

Work to be done in the KITCHEN- GARDEN.

THIS month (the days being at the shortest) is commonly the darkest of the whole year, and is subject to different sorts of weather; sometimes the ground is frozen up, so that little can be done in the garden; and at other times there are hard rains and thick stinking fogs, which render it very uncomfortable stirring abroad, but especially to persons of tender constitutions; and this weather is also very injurious to tender plants.

IF this season is mild, you may earth up those Artichokes which were neglected the former months; in doing of which you should bury a little rotten dung in the ground, which will greatly promote the growth of your Artichokes the following spring.

CARRY

CARRY dung into the quarters of your kitchen-garden, and spread it on the ground, and trench up the quarters, laying the earth in ridges, that it may be mellowed by frost, and be fit for use when the season for cropping them comes on; for if you do not get your ground in readiness at this season, you will have too much business hurrying upon you in the spring; so that when this work is neglected in winter, there will not be time to trench the ground properly in the spring, which frequently occasions its being slightly performed.

PICK snails out of the holes of old walls, or from under pales, hedges, broken pots, or other rubbish; as also behind the stems and branches of wall fruit trees, in which places they lay themselves up during the winter season, and may be then easily taken before they get abroad again.

SOW Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, Turnep, and other sallet herbs upon a moderate hot-bed, which should be either covered with frames, or arched over with hoops, and covered with mats; for at this season these seeds will not come up where they are exposed to the open air.

IN mild weather you should observe to uncover your Cauliflower plants under frames every

A a

day,

day, that they may enjoy the free air, otherwise they will draw up weak, and be good for little; you must also constantly pick off all decayed leaves, which, if suffered to remain on, will be very injurious to the plants; especially if it should happen, that the weather will not permit the beds to be uncovered for two or three days together, which is often the case at this season, when these decayed leaves, rotting in the beds, will emit a rancid vapour; which, mixing with the confined air of the beds, will render it unwholesome for the plants.

EARTH up Celery to blanch it; but this must be done in dry weather, otherwise it will rot the plants; at this time it should be earthed up as near the tops of the plants as possible to protect it from frost: and at the approach of hard frost, it will be necessary to cover some Celery and Endive with fern, straw, or peas haulm, to prevent the ground being frozen, otherwise it cannot be taken up during the frost's continuance in the ground. You should also earth up Cardoons as near their tops as possible for the same reason.

IN mild weather take up Endive in a dry day, and hang it up in a dry place for two or three days, that the moisture may drain from between the leaves; and then lay it in ridges on

Dec. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 355

a dry spot of ground horizontally to blanch it, observing to close the leaves up regularly, and put it into the ground, almost to the tops of the plants.

YOU may now make hot-beds for Asparagus, to supply the table about the latter end of January; for, at this season, it will be near six weeks from the time of making the beds, before the Asparagus will be fit to cut.

ABOUT the middle of this month, if the weather is mild, you should sow some early Peas on warm borders, to succeed those which were sown the former months; and observe to draw some earth up about the stems of those Peas and Beans which are come up, and in bad weather cover them with straw or reeds to protect them from the frost.

TAKE up Cabbages and Savoys which are designed for seed, and hang them up in a dry room by their stalks for a week or ten days, to drain them of moisture; and then plant them down in a warm border, almost over their heads, leaving only the upper part of their heads above ground; but the earth should be raised in a hill about each, the better to throw off the wet, which if detained about them, will cause them to rot: but in the planting of these, there should be particular care

taken to plant each kind separately at a distance, for when they are planted near each other, the farina of the flowers will intermix, whereby their seeds will be degenerated; and if after they are planted the frost should prove severe, it will be proper to cover these over, with dry straw or pease haulm to keep out the frost, for where this is neglected in hard winters, they are frequently destroyed.

YOU may also sow some Radishes, Carrots, and Lettuce, on warm borders near walls or pales, for an early crop, because it may happen that those which were sown the former months may be destroyed, and these escape; for which reason it is proper always to have two or three crops, one under the other, which will allow you a better chance than if you had but one.

TOWARD the latter end of this month you should plant some Sandwich and Toker Beans, which are hardier than the Windsor kind, and will be very proper to succeed the Spanish or Lisbon Beans, which were planted the former month, so that there may be a constant supply for the table.

WHEN the ground is frozen so hard that you cannot dig it, you should repair your fences, and carry dung upon your quarters,
I that

that it may be ready when the frost first goes off; you should also clean your seeds ready for sowing, and prepare all your tools, that there may be no delay when the season is favourable for cropping your ground.

Y o u must now be very careful of your Mushrooms beds, to cover them with fresh dry straw, so thick as to keep out the frost and wet, both which are injurious to these beds; but where proper care is taken, there will be a constant supply of these for the table in the most rigorous seasons.

Products of the KITCHEN-GARDEN.

CABBAGES, Savoys, Red Cabbages, Borecole, some Cauliflowers, if the season proves mild; Purple and White Broccoli, Carrots, Parsneps, Turneps, Potatoes, Skirrets, Scorzonera, Salsafy, Beets, large rooted Parsley, and Horse-radish.

ONIONS, Leeks, Garlic, Rocambole, Shalots, Thyme, Winter Savory, Hyssop, Sage, Rosemary, Chard Beets, Cardoons, Celery, Endive, Sorrel, Turnep-rooted Cabbage, Parsley, Chervil, and some other herbs for soup.

F O R sallets; Cresses, Mustard, Rape, Radish, Turnep, small Lettuce, and other sallet

358 *The Gardener's Kalendar.* Dec.

herbs, upon the hot-bed; Celery, Endive, Burnet, and some brown Dutch Lettuce, from under glasse in mild weather; with Mint and Tarragon upon hot-beds made the beginning of last month, and Asparagus upon hot-beds made in October.

Work to be done in the FRUIT-GARDEN
and ORCHARD.

IF the season be mild, you may dig and prepare your ground for planting fruit trees in February; and mend the borders of your fruit garden with some fresh earth and very rotten dung well mixed together, which will greatly encourage the growth of your trees, and also add to the size and goodness of their fruit.

IT will not be proper to prune any of your fruit trees, either against walls or espaliers at this season, unless it should be very mild weather; lest the frost should follow soon after, which would injure the wounded branches, especially of Peaches, Apricocks, and other tender stone fruit trees.

EXAMINE your orchards, and cut all dead branches out of the trees, as also such as cross each other; in doing of which you should observe

serve to make the wound sloping, and as smooth as possible, that the wet may the easier pass off without entering the wounds of the tree, but these branches should be cut off close to the stems, and not left in spurs, as is by some unskilful persons too often practised.

You may also dung and plough the ground of your orchards between the standard trees, which will be of great service to them, and cause the fruit to be much fairer, and better tasted; and where you intend to plant any young orchards in the spring, the ground should now be prepared for that purpose.

THE vines in the vineyard should now be pruned, if it was not done the former month; for where there is much of this work to perform, it should be begun as soon as the leaves fall, otherwise it may occasion part of them to be left undone till the spring, when the sap will flow out at the wounds and weaken the plants.

IN frosty weather you should be careful to cover the ground about your new planted trees with mulch, to prevent the frost from penetrating the ground to their roots; for that would greatly injure the young fibres.

You must also be very careful to keep the frost out of the room where you keep your

choice winter fruit; for whenever any of the fruit are frozen, they certainly decay soon after. Where orchards or nurseries are inclosed with quick hedges, these may now be trimmed; and if they are grown thin, they may now be plashed and laid so as to make the fences close at bottom.

Fruits now in Prime, or yet lasting.

P E A R S; the Colmar, St. Germain, St. Andrew, Virgouleuse, Ambrette, Leschafferie, Epine d'Hyver, St. Augustine, Beurre d'Hyver, Louise-bonne, l'Amadotte, Spanish Boncretien, Poire de Livre, Ronville, Citron d'Hyver, Roufelle d'Hyver, Martin Sec, Holland Bergamot, Muscat d'Alleman, Bezy de Chaumontelle, with some others.

A P P L E S; the Nonpareil, Golden Pippin, French Pippin, Holland Pippin, Kentish Pippin, Pile's Russet, Winter Pearmain, Wheeler's Russet, Haute-bonne, Rennet Grise, Aromatic Russet, Winter Gilliflower, Golden Russet, Pear Russet, Harvey Apple, Winter Queening, with some others of less note.

As also Medlars, Services, Almonds, some Grapes, where they have been carefully preserved, Chestnuts, Walnuts, and small Nuts.

Work

Work to be done in the NURSERY.

IN this month and the next it is very unsafe to transplant trees; therefore little can be done in the nursery, except carrying in dung where it is wanted; and in mild weather to prepare the ground, where you intend to plant trees in the spring.

OBSEVE now to lay mulch about the stems of your new planted trees, where it has been omitted in the former months; otherwise the frost will enter the ground, and pinch all the new fibres, whereby the trees will be greatly weakened.

IN frosty weather look well to such nurseries as are exposed to hares, rabbits, &c. for in such seasons these animals will be apt to bark your young trees, and spoil them.

IF the weather is mild, you may continue to dig between your rows of trees in the nursery, where it has not been already done; observing, as was before directed, not to injure their roots.

OBSEVE also to secure such young exotick trees as have not strength to resist the cold of our climate, by laying mulch round their stems, and in severe frost cover their tops with pease haulm;

haulm; but this must not remain after the frost is over, lest it cause a mouldiness upon the tender shoots of the plants for want of the free air.

BE careful to cover your beds of seeds and acorns, which were sown in October, to prevent the vermin from getting at them, and to keep the frost out of the ground, which might greatly injure such of them as are sprouting.

YOU should now plash hedges round your nursery or orchard, and repair your other fences; for now is the most leisure time of the whole year in the nursery.

Work to be done in the PLEASURE-GARDEN.

YOUR beds of choice Ranunculuses, Anemones, and Hyacinths should be carefully covered in very wet or frosty weather, both which are equally prejudicial to them.

THE pots or boxes of seedling flowers should also be covered in very hard rains or severe frost, otherwise they will be in danger of being destroyed thereby.

COVER your choice Carnations and Auriculas, to protect them from great rains and snow, which are very injurious to them; but
in

in mild weather they should have as much free air as possible; otherwise they will draw up weak and become very tender.

YOU should now lay some mulch about the roots of your new planted trees and shrubs, as also about your exotick trees, which are planted in the open air, to prevent the frost from penetrating the ground to their roots, which would greatly injure, if not destroy them.

TURN over your several heaps of earth which are prepared for the flower-garden, that the frost may mellow them; and mix up some new heaps that you may have a quantity always prepared eight or ten months at least before you use them,

IN mild weather you should dig and prepare your beds and borders ready for planting flower roots in the spring; in doing of which, it will be proper to lay the earth up in a ridge, that the heavy rains may run off, which would render the earth too wet for planting, if the beds were laid flat to receive them.

CONTINUE to dig up the ground in your wilderness quarters, that the whole may be rendered neat against the next spring, when the trees begin to bud, and the flowers blow, which will invite persons to walk out; but in doing of this, you must be careful not to injure
any

any of the plants which grow between the trees.

PREPARE such parts of your garden, where you intend to plant flowering shrubs or the tender sorts of trees out in the spring: but this ground should be laid in ridges till the season for planting is come, that it may mellow and sweeten.

IN hard frosty weather, when you can do little work in the garden, except the covering and uncovering of your tender plants and shrubs, you must prepare your tallies to number your flowers and seeds when they are sown, and make all your tools ready for use against spring, when you will have full employment abroad.

Plants now in Flower in the open air.

SOME single Anemonies, Polyanthus, Primroses, Stock-gilliflowers, Narcissuses, Hel-leboraster or Bear's foot, Alysson Halimi folio, Red flowered Spring Cyclamen, Tangier Fumitary, Narrow leaved Golden-rod, and in mild weather sometimes the Winter Aconite, and Snowdrops toward the end of the month.

Hardy

Hardy Trees and Shrubs now in Flower.

LAURUSTINUS, Arbutus, or the Strawberry-tree, Spurge Laurel, Glastenbury Thorn, Virginian Groundsel tree, Upright blue-berried Honeysuckle, Genista Spinosa, Clematis Bœtica, Cytisus Maranthe, and in mild weather, the Mezereon, and the Pyracantha in fruit.

Medicinal Plants, which may now be gathered for Use.

BEE T root, Elecampane root, Fennel root, Henbane root, Helleboraster or Bear's foot, Lovage root, Spignel root, Butterbur root, Hogs Fennel root, Harts Tongue, Polypody root, Solomon's Seal root, Savin, Sopewort root, Scorzoneria root, Skirret root.

ALL these roots may be taken up, whenever the frost doth not prevent it; for as most of these plants are at this season in an inactive state, so they are in the greatest perfection, either for medicine or the table.

Work

*Work to be done in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

IF the season is very cold, you must keep the windows and doors of your green-house closely shut; and in frosty nights the shutters should be duly shut; but in mild weather you should open them every day to give light to the plants at all times; and when there is sun in frosty weather, and the air is warmed, some of the glasses should be drawn down to let fresh air into the house; but this should be done with caution, otherwise there will be a damp moist air, which will cause the tender shoots of the plants to grow mouldy and decay; therefore whenever you observe any mouldiness upon your plants, you must immediately clean it off; otherwise it will spread, and infect the neighbouring plants; you must also diligently pick off all decayed leaves, and not permit them to fall off upon the floor; because if they remain in the house, they will rot and infect the air, to the injury of your plants.

YOU must now water your plants very sparingly, especially such of them as are of a succulent nature, as Aloes, Cereuses, Ficoidefes, Sedums,

Sedums, Cotyledons, &c. but your Myrtles, Amomum Plinii's, Leonuruses, Oleanders, Bays, Adhatoda, with other woody plants, must be frequently watered; but in cold weather they should not have too much given them at a time, but rather give it to them often, and in less quantities.

THE fires in the stoves must now be carefully kept up, as well in dark foggy weather as in severe frost; for if the air is damp, it is equally injurious as a sharp air to the plants; so that you must be directed by a well graduated thermometer, as to the degree of heat which your plants require.

YOUR Ananas, or Pine apples, must have a good share of heat; otherwise they will not produce fruit the following summer: you must also observe to refresh them often with water, giving it in small quantities at this season, which should be placed in the stove to warm, at least twelve or fourteen hours before it is used: where this watering is neglected, or unskilfully performed, the plants are often so checked, as not to be recovered in some months after.

YOUR tender exotick plants, which are plunged in the bark bed, must now be carefully tended, to water them as they shall require

quire it; and pick off all decayed leaves, and clear them from insects and filth, which they are very subject to contract, especially the Coffee trees, which must be often cleansed, otherwise their leaves will decay.

You must now mix up your several composts of earth for your exotick plants, and turn over those heaps which have been already prepared, that their several parts may be better united together.

*Plants now in Flower in the GREEN-HOUSE
and STOVE.*

LEONURUSES, Candytuft tree, Yellow Indian Jasmine, Aleppo Cyclamens, Ascyron Balearicum, Geraniums, Spanish Jasmine, Arabian Jasmine, Ilex-leaved Jasmine, Polygala arborescens, double flowered Indian Nasturtium, Onion-leaved Asphodel, several sorts of Aloes, Arctotuses, Leucanthemum Pyrethris, Carolina Dwarf Sunflower, Canary Campanula, Althæa arborescens, Piercea in flower and fruit, Virginian large blue Aster, Golden-rod, Senecio folio retuso, Phylica, Diosma, some sorts of Ficoideæ, Sensitive Plants, Indian flowering Reed, Malpighia mali punici facie, Elichrysums, Teucrium Bœticum,

Dec. *The Gardeners Kalendar.* 369

ticum, Heliotropium Scorodonæ folio, Clusia,
Plumbago Ceylanense, Oriental Ptarmica, Afri-
can Wood Sorrel with large purple, and with
yellow flowers, black flowering Lotus, Mex-
ican Clary, Heliotrope from Peru, Sedum arbo-
rescens, Fabagos, Calendula Africana, Apocy-
nums, with some others; and in fruit Lycium
Pyracanthæ foliis, Solanums of several sorts,
Alkekengi, Amomum Plinii.



1847

1848

1849

1850

1851

1852

1853

1854

1855

1856

1857

1858

1859

1860

1861

1862

1863

1864

1865

1866

1867

1868

1869

1870

1871

1872

1873

1874

1875



A
SHORT INTRODUCTION
TO THE
KNOWLEDGE
OF THE
SCIENCE of BOTANY.



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

1911

W. H. D. N. 2

3011 CH. OF BOT. 1113

1911

1113



A
SHORT INTRODUCTION
TO THE
KNOWLEDGE
OF THE
SCIENCE of BOTANY.

ALL the sciences have each their proper language: but Botany alone has almost as many different languages as there are different authors, each using names and particular phrases, to represent the same plants; and sometimes the same denomination is applied by different authors to different plants; but although the Nomenclature of Botany has in all times been varied, yet it never was so much altered as of late years. New Views have

374 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*
occasioned new observations, which have enabled the modern Botanists to rectify the denominations of the antients.

A denomination is so much more perfect, as it contains fewer arbitrary things, and has less relation to foreign. This is a kind of definition, which must be rendered as exact as possible, using the visible attributes and qualities of the plant itself, making an abstraction of the affinity it has to other plants of the same genus, or of different genera.

The modern Botanists have an advantage over the antients in following this rule; they name the plants from the parts which they contain; whereas the others have generally given them by their outward appearance; the moderns in each of their phrases, have regard to the essential parts of the plant they express: that in a word is the most particular character, which can be known by the first inspection, avoiding the long denominations and terms which are superfluous, and only burden the memory to no purpose, they have banished the names of the countries where the plants grow, their virtues, and properties, &c. from the titles.

When there is but one known specie of a genus, it is not necessary to add a specific denomination-

nomination to its generical name, because there is no other specie to distinguish it from. And it were to be wished, that each plant had but one essential character to distinguish it from all the other species of the genus: in which case each denomination would be comprised in two or three words. But as it often happens that one specie has many different characters common to one or other species of the same genus, they are then obliged to add a longer denomination to it. However all other things being equal, the shortest phrases are always best. In consequence of this, doctor *Linnaeus*, the celebrated professor of Botany at *Upsal* in *Sweden*, has proposed simple and proper terms, not only to express all the different parts of plants, but also the principal qualities, forms, figures, situations, directions, and manners of existing of each of these parts. He is not satisfied to join the definitions and explications to each of these terms, to fix and determine their true meaning: but he has also added figures to such as were necessary to give a more just and complete idea of them. These principals have been almost universally adopted, by those who have wrote after him. This rule he will not permit to be

376 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

departed from; and his manner of expression is become the living language of Botany.

The sexual method of classing plants, established by doctor *Linnæus*, is much preferable to all the systems of Botany which have yet appeared. 1. Because of all those which have been proposed, there is not one of them which approaches so near to a natural method as this, most of the classes being very natural. 2. It is founded upon the parts of the plants, which are the most constant, and least subject to variation, the stamina and pointals, which are the true organs of generation.

These are simple and easy to retain in memory. The classes are established upon the stamina or male organs; the orders or subdivisions of the classes upon the pointals or female organs; and the genera upon all the parts of the fructification. All these parts being considered according to their number, their figure, their proportion, and their situation, the specifick differences are taken from the habit or external appearances of the plants. Those who will take the trouble of examining this method, and comparing it with any of the former, will be much better acquainted with its excellence than words can explain it. The author does not pretend to say it is perfect;

fect; the only natural method, if there is one, should have an advantage of this, but in default of the last, he endeavours to follow that which approaches nearest to it.

Doctor *Linnaeus* has taken the most essential parts of the plants, which are those of the fructification, to establish the characters of the genera, in a more substantial manner, than all the authors who have preceded him. The exact descriptions which he has given of all these parts, and the short natural terms which he has used, together with the observations which he has added to those of his genera, which carry any essential character, or which are liable to exception in any of the species, are owing to the labour of this worthy botanist. It is certain that these descriptions will have this advantage, that they can be applied to any method which may be hereafter invented, for the establishing of new genera, when the old ones are insufficient, by the junction of those whose identity have escaped the first methodists, by the dismembering of some of them, which were over charged with species, (which fatigue and embarrass the learner,) in short by clearing of some other whose characters are equivocal or obscure. Doctor *Linnaeus* has found a way of ranging the species under their
true

378 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

true genera, and of separating those which do not properly belong to them.

The distinguishing varieties from real species, is a part of the science of botany not well understood; for as variety of soils, situations, and culture greatly alter the appearance of plants, so there are too many who from a fondness of shewing their great nicety in distinguishing, are apt to make species of several plants, which are only accidental variations; while others, on the contrary, are as ready to suppose many plants which agree in some particular characters, are only accidental variations; and it must be confessed that the learned author whose system we here adopt, is of this number; for in all his books where he has enumerated the species of plants, he has joined by way of synonym many plants as varieties of the species, which are always constant in their essential characters, when propagated by seeds, be the soil or situation ever so different: but this may be readily excused, for as he has not had experience enough in the culture of plants, to know how far, culture, difference of soils and situations will alter the appearances of plants, so it cannot be expected he should be perfect in an article, which requires many years trial and observation to determine.

The

The following circumstances are excluded by doctor *Linnaeus*, from having any share in distinguishing the species from varieties, viz. sex, magnitude, time of flowering, colour, scent, taste, virtues and uses, duration, multitude, pubescens, leaves and monstrous flowers. Most of which it must be confessed should not be allowed as distinguishing characters to species, but there are some which must be admitted, where other marks are wanting to distinguish two species which have great affinity, provided the characters so used are permanent: and these we find have been frequently used by doctor *Linnaeus* himself in his later works with great propriety, and it may be presumed as he becomes more knowing in the culture of plants, he will adopt many more.

According to modern botanists, plants are supposed to consist of the six following parts, the Root, *Radix*, the Trunk, *Truncus*, the Support, *Fulcra*, the Leaves, *Folia*, the Flowers, *Flores*, and the Fruit, *Fructus*.

The Root, *Radix*,
Is that part of a plant which is fastened to the ground, or to some other body, from whence it draws its nourishment.

Roots are divided into three sorts, viz. fibrous, bulbous, and tuberous.

A fibrous

380 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

A fibrous root is composed of many other small roots, which divide at the stalk or trunk, see fig. 1. plate 1. These are sometimes perpendicular, and are called tap roots as at a. f. or horizontal which are called spreading roots as at b. Fleshy, or *Carnose*, see fig. 2. Hairy, *Filamentosa*, which appear like slender threads or hairs, as at c. fig. 1. single at fig. 2. and branching at fig. 1.

Bulbous roots are of the five following sorts,
 1 Solid, *Solida*, as fig. 3. these are of a thick fleshy solid substance, as is represented at fig. 4. which is cut horizontally through the middle.
 2 Coated, *Tunicata*, see fig. 5. which are composed of many lamina, or coats, closely surrounding each other as is represented fig. 6. where it is cut through the middle.
 3. Scaled, *Squamosa*, see fig. 7. these are composed of many fleshy scales lying over each other.
 4. Double, *Duplicata*, see fig. 8. where there are two solid bulbs joined; these are also called Testiculated roots.
 5. Clustered, *Aggregata*, see fig. 9. these are also called Granulous roots, having some appearance of grain.

A tuberous root is one that is composed of many fleshy tubers, which swell more than the stalk, see fig. 10. when these adhere closely to the stalk, they are termed *sessilis*, i. e. sitting

sitting close ; or if they are suspended by threads, they are called pendulous, see fig. 11. these are of different figures.

The Trunk, *Tuncus*,

Is that part of a plant which rises immediately from the root, and sustains the branches; this denomination is therefore only given to trees ; and that of stalk to plants.

Stalks are divided into simple or compound.

A Simple Stalk *Caulis Simplex*, is one which arises single from the root, and continues so without interruption to the top. This is also called an entire stalk, *caulis integer*. When the stalk has no leaves or branches, it is called a naked stalk, *caulis nudus*. When it is garnished with leaves, *caulis foliatus*, a leafy stalk. When it is upright, *caule rectus*. Or if it is oblique to the root, *caule obliquus*. When it twines round a support, *caule volubilis*. If it is pliant, *caule flexuosus*. When it reclines to the ground, *caule reclinatus*. If it lies upon the ground, *caule procumbens*. When it puts roots out of the joints which fasten to the ground, *caule repens*, a creeping stalk. When it puts out roots the whole length of the stalks, *sarmentosus*. If the stalks live several years, they
are

382 Introduction to the Knowledge of

are termed, *perennis*, abiding stalks, if but one year, *annuus*, annual. When they are lignous or woody, *fruticosus*, shrubby, or *suffruticosus*, under shrubs. If they are cylindrical, *teres*, or taper. When they have two angles, *anceps*, if three angles, *trigonus*, if many angles, *polygonus*. When a stalk is streaked, *striatus*. If furrowed, *canaculatus*, channelled. When it is smooth, *glaber*. If it is hairy, *villosus*. If rough, *scaber*. And if the hairs are prickly, *hispidus*.

A branching Stalk, *Caulis ramosus*, Is one that puts out lateral branches as it ascends. If the branches are irregular and thinly placed, it is called a diffused stalk, *diffusus*. If they are large, *brachiatus*, or limbed. When there are a great number of branches *ramosissimus* very branching. If they have supports *fulcratus*. When they are prolifick, *proliferous*.

A compound Stalk, *Caulis compositus*, is one that soon divides into branches; when it is forked, it is called *Dichotomus*, if it has two ranges of branches *districbus*, or when these are again divided *subdivisus*. A straw, *culmus*, is a fistulous stalk garnished with leaves, and is generally terminated by a spike or panicle, as in grasses or corn. If this is intire *integer*; or branched *ramosus*; if uniform *æqualis*, if jointed *articulatus*;

articulatus ; or scaley *squamosus*, if without leaves *nudus*, or when garnished with leaves, *foliatus*.

The supports *fulcra*, are certain parts of a plant, which serve to sustain or defend the others. These are of the ten following sorts. The *stipula*. The leaf which supports the flowers *bractea*. The tendril or clasper *cirrbus* or *capreolus*. The spine *spina*. The thorn *aculeus*. The footstalk of the leaf *petiolus*. The footstalk of the flower or fruit *pedunculus*. The stalk *scapus*. The gland *glandula*. The scale *squama*.

The footstalk which sustains the flower or fruit is called *pedunculus*. If this sustains but one flower or fruit *unicam*. If two *geminam*, if several *plurimam*, and when it supports a great number *numerosam*. When these arise from the root *radicalem*, from the stalk *caulinam*; from the wings of the stalk *alarem*, or from the extremity *terminatricem* or *terminalem*. If they are single *solitariam*, or thinly placed *sparsam*; if in groups *conglobatam*, in clusters *conglomeratam*, if in panicles *paniculatam*, or in roundish bunches *corymbosam*; if in close bunches or bundles *fasciculatam*. When they are in whorles round the stalks *verticillatam*, or in spikes *spicatam*. If in long bunches like grapes *racemosam*, or in form of an

384 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

an umbrella *umbellatam*, if in form of a head *capitatam*.

The stalk *scapus* is so called when it rises single from the root without branches, and immediately supports the flowers and fructification.

The footstalk of the leaf *petiolus*, is that which sustains the leaf as the *pedunculus* sustains the flower and fruit, and is sometimes called the tail of the leaf.

The tendril *cirrbus* or *capreolus* is a clasper, by which a plant fastens itself to any other body for support.

The *bracttea* or floral leaf, is of a different form and colour from the other leaves, and is always situated near the flower, and never appears but with it ; so may be termed a floral leaf.

The *stipula* is a scale which forms the future bud, and is situated at the insertions of the leaf.

The thorn *aculeus* is a sharp brittle point, which is so slightly fastened to the plant, as to be taken off without tearing the other parts.

The spine *spina*, is so firmly fastened to the plant, that it cannot be taken off without tearing it.

The

The gland, *glandula*, is a kind of teat which serves for the secretion of the humours.

The scale, *squama*, is generally found in katkins, where they serve as a cover to the stamina and apices of the male flowers; and in some flowers at the bottom of the flower-cup, or under the flowers themselves, in some plants.

Of LEAVES, *Folia*.

I shall not here mention all the varieties of leaves, which are taken notice of by some of the late writers in Botany, but shall only here include their principal or most essential differences; and shall not take the terms from a single difference, but from such as are common to many; for the inserting too great number of terms will burden the memory too much, which will embarrass the learner in the application of them; and if those here mentioned are not sufficient to distinguish every variety, we should endeavour to keep a just medium between the old and new terms, avoiding the two extremes.

When two genera of leaves are combined to form one species, or the species is composed of two genera, which become the parts of the species, these genera being once established, it

386 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

will not be difficult to form the species, so as to require no other definition, provided the genera are well defined, and do not burden the memory ; as for example,

<i>Cordato-ovatum.</i>	<i>Ovato-cordatum.</i>
<i>Cordato-ovale.</i>	<i>Ovali-cordatum.</i>
<i>Cordato-oblongum.</i>	<i>Oblongo-cordatum.</i>
<i>Cordato-lanceolatum.</i>	<i>Lanceolato-cordatum.</i>
<i>Cordato-sagittatum.</i>	<i>Sagittato-cordatum.</i>
<i>Cordato-hastatum.</i>	<i>Hastato-cordatum.</i>

There must be great care taken in placing the genera either first or last, in the formation of the species, for this is not indifferent ; the last denotes the form in which the leaf results, and the first in some measure corrects it, by adding a sort of exception to it ; so that by changing their place, it will alter the definition of the leaf. As for example, *Cordato-ovatum*, by this is to be understood a leaf more approaching to an oval. But when it is *Ovato-cordatum*, the leaf is supposed to be more of a heart-shape. But this will be better conceived by their figures hereafter referred to.

Leaves are divided into the three following classes.

I. Single

1. Single leaves.
2. Compound leaves.
3. Determinate leaves.

The 1st class of single leaves. Plate II.

Those leaves are called single, *simplicia*, whose footstalks support but one.

There are seven sorts of single leaves, where we consider a leaf according to its circumference, *sinus*, its borders, its surface, its summit, and its substance.

The circumference (*circumscriptio*) of a leaf depends upon its border having no *sinus* or angle; therefore we should comprehend in this title all those leaves whose figures are in form of a ring differently compressed, if they have no *sinus* or angles.

1. We call a leaf orbicular or round (*orbiculatum*) whose length and breadth are equal, and whose borders are equally distant from the center, see fig. 1. plate II.

2. A roundish leaf (*subrotundum*) is one whose breadth is greater than the length, see fig. 2. but this term is often used in a more extensive sense.

3. An oval leaf (*ovatum*) is in form of an egg, and is longer than it is broad; and when the base or lower part forms a segment

388 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

of a circle, but the upper part draws nearer to a point, see fig. 3.

An obverse oval leaf (*obverse-ovatum*) is one in form of an egg reversed, the same as fig. 3. when the part which is fastened to the footstalk is narrower than the top.

4. An oval or elliptick leaf, is one which is longer than it is broad, and whose upper and lower parts have the same segment of a circle, see fig. 4.

An oblong leaf (*oblongum*) is one whose length is more than twice the breadth, and the two points are narrower than the segment of a circle, see fig. 5.

A wedge-shaped leaf (*cuneiforme*) is one that is shaped like a wedge; the length is much greater than the breadth, and is narrowed from the top to the base, see fig. 45.

The angles of a leaf (*anguli*) are the prominent parts which project from the border of an entire leaf.

An angle is different from a sinus, as it is the projecting part of a leaf, see fig. 20. *e, a, e*, whereas the sinus is the part which is diminished, see fig. 20. *a, e, b*, so the angle exists in the leaf, and the sinus is without the leaf. We must not confound the sides with the angle, as is frequently done. The angle
in

in a leaf is considered horizontally, fig. 20. *a, b, c*, and the side of a leaf in a perpendicular view, see fig. 58. *a, b, c*.

A Spear-shaped leaf, (*lanceolatum*) is shaped like the point of a spear; it is oblong, and gradually narrowed from the middle to both ends, where it ends in points, see fig. 6.

A linear or narrow leaf (*lineare*) is that which commonly is narrowed toward the two ends, but the sides are parallel its whole length, see fig. 7.

An awl-shaped leaf (*subulatum*) is somewhat like the former on its upper surface, but the under part is thicker in the middle, growing narrower to a point at the top, like the point of an awl, see fig. 8.

A triangular leaf (*triangulare*) is one with three rectangular sides, and three angles, the two lower being even with the base, see fig. 12.

A deltoide leaf (*deltoides*) is one with four angles, the two at the top being at a greater distance from the center than those of the sides, see fig. 58.

A quinqueangular or five cornered leaf (*quinqueangulare*) is one whose sides are strait to the middle and are not broken, see fig. 20. *a, b*, this sometimes happens.

390 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

After these differences are once established, it will be easy to figure any other varieties which may arise from the number of angles, which do rarely happen.

A round leaf (*rotundum*) is one that has no angles or indentures, so is different from the preceding, especially the seventh and twelfth.

A sinus divides the disk of the leaf into many parts, at the base, as in fig. 14. and 18. at the top as in fig. 21, 22. at the sides as in 23, 25. the whole length as in fig. 26.

A kidney-shaped leaf (*reniforme*) is that which is shaped like a kidney, it is almost orbicular, but indented at the base without angles, see fig. 9.

A heart-shaped leaf (*cordatum*) is shaped somewhat like an egg, but is indented at the base without angles, see fig. 10.

A moon-shaped leaf (*lunatum*) is somewhat like a half orbicular leaf, but is deeply indented into two curve angles at the base, like a half moon, see fig. 11.

An arrow pointed leaf (*sagittatum*) is a triangular leaf indented at the base like the point of an arrow, see fig. 13.

A heart arrow-pointed leaf (*Cordato-hastatum*) is like the former, but the borders are convex, see fig. 14.

A pike

A pike or javelin-shaped leaf (*bastatum*) is a triangular leaf whose sides and base are indented, and the angles are expanded like the point of a halberd, see fig. 15.

A bifid leaf (*bifidum*) is a leaf divided at the top in two parts, whose inferior borders within the division are strait, see fig. 16.

There are some leaves which are divided into three parts (*trifidum*) others into four (*quadrifidum*) some into five (*quinquefidum*) and others into many (*multifidum*) from the number of these divisions, they are easily known.

A trilobate or three-lobed leaf (*trilobum*) is one that is divided into three lobes to the middle, which are separated from each other, and their borders rounded, see fig. 17.

When the leaves are divided into two lobes (*bilobum*) or four (*quadrilobum*) or five (*quinquelobum*) so from the number of their lobes, they may be easily defined.

A palmated-leaf (*palmatum*) is in form of a hand opened, it is divided into several parts from the top to the middle, or almost to the base, see fig. 22.

A wing-pointed leaf, (*pinnatifidum*) is one which is cut into several lateral sinuses, separat-

392 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*
ed their whole length like the feathers of a
wing, see fig. 23.

A jagged leaf (*laciniatum*) is one that is
cut into many sinuses, to the midrib, and the
lobes are also cut undeterminately on their
borders, see fig. 24.

A sinuated leaf (*sinuatum*) is one that is
cut on the borders into sinuses the whole
length, which are separated by lobes which
are but slightly intended, see fig. 25.

An indented sinuated leaf (*sinuato-dentatum*)
is the same with the former, but the lateral
lobes are narrower, see fig. 26.

A quinquepartite leaf (*quinquepartitum*) is
one that is divided into five parts to the base,
see fig. 28.

In changing the number of parts into
which the leaf is divided, we may denote their
signification, as in two (*bipartitum*) in three
(*tripartitum*) in four (*quadripartitum*) and if
into many (*multipartitum*).

An entire leaf (*integrum*) is one which has
no sinus on its border, and an undivided
leaf (*indivisum*) is the same, but *integrum*
must be distinguished from *integerrimum*; the
first denotes a leaf which has no sinus in its
disk, and the second has none on its border.

The margin or border of a leaf (*margo*)
denotes

denotes the variety there is seen on the edges of leaves, but these have no relation to their disk, nor are the extremities at the top included in this distinction.

An indented leaf (*dentatum*) is one that has its borders end with horizontal points of the same consistence with the leaves, but are separate and distinct from each other.

A sawed leaf (*serratum*) is one whose borders are sharply indented like the teeth of a saw, lying one over the other like tiles, and generally point toward the top, see fig. 31. When these indentures point toward the base, it is termed *retrorsum serratum*, *i, e*, sawed backward.

A double sawed leaf (*duplicato serratum*) is one whose borders are garnished with two sorts of teeth, one small and the other large, see fig. 32. the less upon the greater.

A crenated or notched leaf (*crenatum*) is one whose borders are cut into angles or indentures, which are contiguous and turn inward, without any bend either to the top or the base, see fig. 38. When the notches are pointed, it is termed (*acute crenatum*) see fig. 35. and when they are rounded (*obtusè crenatum*) see fig. 36. and a double crenated leaf,
is

394 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

is one that has small crenatures upon the larger, see fig. 33.

A repanded leaf (*repandedum*) is one whose border is indented the whole length, and the lobes are each a segment of a circle, with obtuse sinuses between them, see fig. 46.

A cartilaginous or gristly leaf (*cartilagineum*) is one whose border is distinguished from the other part of the leaf by a cartilage or membranous fleshy substance, see fig. 34.

A ciliated leaf (*ciliatum*) is one whose border is set round with small parallel hairs, like those of the eye lid, see fig. 50.

A lacerated or torn leaf (*lacerum*) is one whose border is composed of torn segments of different sizes and figures, see fig. 24.

A curled leaf (*crispum*) is one whose border is plaited and fringed like a furbelow, see fig. 39.

A gnawed leaf (*erosum*) is one whose sinus and disk appear as if they were eaten on their borders, see fig. 21.

An entire leaf (*integerrimum*) is one whose border is quite entire without any kind of indenture, see fig. 42.

The superficies of a leaf denotes its surface above and below.

A downy leaf (*tomentosum*) is one whose surface is covered with hairs so small, as not to be distinguished by the naked eye, like cotton cloth, see fig. 48.

A velvet leaf (*pilosum*) is one whose surface is garnished with hairs which are discernable, see fig. 47.

A hairy leaf (*hirsutum*) is very near a-kin to the former, but the hairs are longer.

A stinging leaf (*hispidum*) is one whose surface is covered with rough brittle hairs, which sting the flesh when handled, and are easily broken, see fig. 49.

A rough leaf (*scabrum*) is one whose disk is covered with small inequalities or tubercles.

A bristly leaf (*aculeatum*) is one whose surface has many cartilaginous bristles which easily separate from the leaf.

A prickly leaf (*spinosum*) has its disk or border armed with cartilaginous thorns which adhere closely to the leaf, and cannot be separated without injury to the leaf.

A warted leaf (*papillosum*) is one whose surface is garnished with small protuberances or vesicles, see fig. 54.

A polished leaf (*nitidum*) is one whose surface is smooth, and shining as if polished.

A plaited

396 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

A plaited leaf (*plicatum*) is one that is plaited from the base by a sort of vessel or nerve which extends to the border, one being raised, and another depressed alternately, so as that the disk appears in angles, see fig. 37.

A waved leaf (*undulatum*) is that whose outer part of the disk becomes extended beyond a circle of the same diameter, in such a manner that the borders rise and fall like waves, see fig. 46.

A wrinkled leaf (*rugosum*) is one that has deep veins, leaving between them spaces, where the substance of the disk rises like flesh interposing, see fig. 51.

A veined leaf (*venosum*) is one that has branching veins or vessels running thro' it, or appears to have a great number of orifices of veins joined, see fig. 52.

A nervose leaf (*nervosum*) is one that has single veins, extending parallel from the base to the top without branching, see fig. 53.

A naked leaf (*nudum*) is one that has no marks or veins, so is opposite to the former.

The point or top of a leaf (*apex*) represents the diversities there are in the upper extremity.

A truncated leaf (*truncatum*) is one whose top is terminated by a transverse line.

A blunt

A blunt leaf (*retusum*) is one whose top is terminated by a transverse line.

A blunt leaf (*præmorsum*) is one whose top is divided by an open pointed sinus, see fig. 18.

A hollowed leaf (*emarginatum*) is one that is slopewise indented at the top; when it is terminated by blunt summits, it is termed (*obtuse-emarginatum*) see fig. 45. and when it is terminated by pointed summits (*acute-emarginatum*.)

An obtuse leaf (*obtusum*) is one that is terminated by a segment of a circle, see fig. 40.

A pointed leaf (*acutum*) is terminated by a sharp point, see fig. 41.

An awl-pointed leaf (*acuminatum*) is one whose summit is terminated like the point of an awl, see fig. 42.

A blunt-pointed leaf (*obtusum cum acumine*) is one whose top is blunt and terminated by a sharp point, see fig. 43.

The sides of a leaf (*latera*) is perceived when all the parts are considered in a perpendicular situation.

A taper leaf (*teres*) is one that is of a cylindrical form, or shaped like a pillar except the summit, see fig. 62.

A piped leaf, (*tubulosum*) is one that is hollow, but cannot be perceived unless it is cut transversely.

A fleshy

398 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

A fleshy leaf (*carnosum*) is one that is full of pulp, or fleshy substance between the membranes, which form the upper end and lower surface.

A membranaceous leaf (*membranaceum*) is one that the membranes do not inclose any pulp.

A depressed leaf (*depressum*) is one that appears as if it was pressed on the side which regards the stalk.

A compressed leaf (*compressum*) is one that is impressed on the two opposite sides which do not regard the stalk.

A flat or plain leaf (*planum*) is when both the surfaces are level and parallel every where.

A convex leaf (*convexum*) is a depressed leaf raised in the middle above the sides.

A concave leaf (*concavum*) is one that is hollowed in the middle.

A channeled leaf (*canaliculatum*) is one that is channeled or guttered the whole length, see fig. 61.

A sword-shaped leaf (*ensiforme*) is one that is compressed, and edged like a sword on both sides, with a convex middle the whole length.

A sabre-shaped leaf (*acinaciforme*) is a compressed fleshy leaf like the point of a spear, with
one

one edge convex and narrow, the other broader and raised, and the inner blunt and straiter, see fig. 56.

A hatchet-shaped leaf (*dolabrisforme*) is a compressed suborbicular leaf like a plainer; it is blunt, projecting or swelling outwardly with a sharp edge, and almost cylindrical toward the lower part, see fig. 57.

A tongue-shaped leaf (*linguiforme*) is a depressed linear fleshy leaf, a little convex on the upper side, and has generally cartilaginous borders, see fig. 55.

A three-sided leaf (*triquetrum*) is one that has three flat longitudinal sides, but is generally awl-pointed.

A three-cornered leaf (*trigonum*) is like the former, but the faces are channeled and the projections are membranous.

OF COMPOUND LEAVES, Plate III.

Compound leaves are divided into simple and decomposed.

A compound leaf is composed of several small leaves united together upon the same common footstalk, which is but one compound leaf.

A leaf

400 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

A leaf is called (*folium*) but when it is composed of many small leaves, it is called (*foliolum*) these form a compound leaf.

A compound leaf when properly understood, is one which is produced from a single composition.

A fingered or handed leaf (*digitatum*) is one composed of several small leaves fitting on the top of a common footstalk, but in a strict sense it should be composed of more than four small leaves, see fig. 1.

A trifoliate leaf (*ternatum*) is one composed of three small leaves standing upon one common footstalk, see fig. 2. when these have no proper footstalk, it is termed (*foliolis sessilibus*) but when each has a proper footstalk (*foliolis petiolatis.*)

When a leaf is composed of two lobes (*binatum*) these fit upon a common footstalk, see fig. 3.

When it has many small leaves branching upon a common footstalk, it is called a branching leaf (*ramulosum*) see fig. 4.

A winged leaf (*pinnatum*) is composed of many small leaves, ranged along on each side the common footstalk like wings; but as these are ranged in different manners, so they have different appellations, viz.

When

When it is terminated by a single lobe or little leaf, it is an unequal winged leaf, (*imparipinnatum*) see fig. 5. when it is not terminated by a small leaf or tendril, it is called an abrupt winged leaf (*abruptum*), see fig. 6.

When the small leaves are placed opposite on the footstalk, as in fig. 6. it is called an opposite winged leaf; but when they are placed alternately, it is called an alternate winged leaf.

When the small leaves are alternately unequal, as in fig. 7. it is called an interrupt winged leaf.

If it has claspers or tendrils by which it fastens to any other body or support, it is called a (*cirrhus*) winged leaf, see fig. 8.

When the small leaves have borders running along the footstalk from one to the other, as in fig. 9. it is called a running winged leaf (*decurrentibus*).

When the footstalks have a jointed membrane between the small leaves, as in fig. 10. they are termed membranaceous footstalks.

When the leaf is composed of one pair of little leaves placed opposite, as in fig. 11. it is called a conjugated leaf.

A lyre shaped leaf (*lyratum*) is one leaf whose lower part is cut in such manner, as if

402 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

the segments at the base were separated from the body of the leaf, and detached from those on the top, see fig. 12.

A double winged leaf (*duplicato-pinnatum*) or (*pinnato-pinnatum*) is a leaf composed of leaves, which were composed before of wings, see fig. 13.

A decomposite leaf (*decomposita*) is that whose common footstalk divides twice before it is garnished with leaves, as in fig. 23, and 24. this is also called a doubly winged leaf, (*duplicato-pinnatum*).

A supradecomposite leaf is one whose common footstalk divides several times before it is garnished with small leaves, see fig. 19 and 22.

A double trifoliate leaf, (*duplicato-ternatum*) is one which is composed of two orders of trefoil leaves, and when the common footstalk is divided into three, each sustaining three leaves, it is called a triplicate trefoil leaf (*triplicato-ternatum*) see fig. 15.

Of the determination of leaves.

The determination of leaves consists in this difference, *viz.* that a leaf is distinguished without any regard to it's structure or form; this is divided into four orders, which consist in

the direction, the place, the insertion, and the situation.

I. The direction, see fig. 16. is the expansion which the leaf acquires from the bottom to the top. If it is arched (*inflexum*), that is, when it returns toward the footstalk as at *a, a*; when it is upright (*erectum*), that is if it makes an acute angle with the footstalk, see *b, b*. If it spreads open, or stands almost in a right angle with the perpendicular *c, c*, it is called (*patens*); when it is horizontal, that is, when it makes a right angle with the perpendicular, as at *d, d*, (*horizontale*); when the leaf is reclinated, or the summit is turned so that it is lower than the base (*reclinatum*), as at *e, e*; when it is turned back or rolled as at *f, f*, (*revolutum*), or a revolved leaf.

When a leaf puts out a radicle from its top, as some of the ferns do, it is called *radicans*; if it puts out roots from its under surface, *radicatum*, and if they float on the waters, *natans*.

II. The place, see fig. 17. this is determined by the place where it is fastened to the plant, the seed leaf (*seminale*) *a, a*, is that which is first put out from the seed, and is often called *Cotyledon*.

404 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

A radicle leaf (*radicale*) is one which rises from the root, and is not fastened to the stalk, *b*, those leaves which are fastened to the stalk (*caulinum*) *c, c, c*, those which sit on the branches (*ramosum*) *d, d*, those which are under the ramifications or wings of the stalk, (*subulare*) *e, e*, and the floral leaf (*florale*) is always situated near the flower.

III. The infertion is the manner in which a leaf is fastened to the plant, see fig. 18.

A Buckler or shield shaped leaf (*peltatum*) is one whose footstalk is fastened to its disk, and not to the base or border *a*.

When the leaf has a footstalk at its base by which it is fastened to the plant as at *b*, it is called *petiolatum*.

If it is fastened to the branch without a footstalk as at *c*, (*sessile*) fitting close.

When the base of the leaf is fastened by a membrane runing along the stalk as at *d*, *decurrens*. When the base of the leaf extends so as to embrace the stalk quite round as at *e*, *amplexicaule*.

But when the lobes of the base are too short for to wholly embrace the stalk, it is termed *semiamplexicaule*, half embracing.

A perfoliate leaf (*perfoliatum*) is one whose disk surrounds the stalk, the branch, or the footstalk

footstalk without any of the borders adhering to it, as at *f*.

A coherent leaf (*folia connata*) is where the base of two opposite leaves unite, and appear to be but one leaf, see *a*, when the base of the leaf is like a cylinder, and surrounds the stalk or branch like a sheath as at *b*, it is termed (*vaginans*).

IV. The situation of the leaves (*situs*) depends upon the position of each with regard to the others, see fig. 21.

A jointed leaf (*folia articulata*) is one whose summits are joined to the other, see fig. 20.

Starry leaves (*folia stellata*) are such as have six or more small leaves surrounding the stalk which are pointed like stars as at *a*.

When there are but three of these leaves, they are termed *ternata*; when four as at *b*, *quaterna*; when five, *quina*, &c.

When two leaves are placed opposite on the stalk as at *c*, *c*, it is termed (*folia opposita*) and when they are ranged one above the other as at *d*, *d*, *folia alternata*, alternate leaves.

When the leaves are situated loosely without order upon the branches as at *e*, they are termed (*folia sparsa*), scattered leaves.

When there are many leaves set upon a common footstalk, which are so closely placed

406 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

as that their situation cannot be easily discovered, they are termed (*conferta*) clustered, as at letter *f*.

When they are ranged like the tiles of a house, or scales of fish, *imbricata*, as at *g*.

But when the leaves are placed in clusters, proceeding from the same point as at *b*, *fasciculata*, clustered or bundled leaves.

Of the parts of the fructification.

These parts are either general or particular, the general are two, *viz.* the flower and the fruit. The particular are subdivided into the eight following parts, *viz.* the empalement or cup (*calyce*), the flower-leaves, or petals, (*corolla*), the stamina, (*filamenta*), the summits (*anthera*), the pointal or style (*stylus*), the pericarpium or fleshy substance which surrounds the seeds, the seed (*semina*), and the receptacle or placenta. The five first belong to the flower, and the three last to the fruit.

The parts of the flower, plate IV.

I. The cup of the flower (*calyx*) is that which incloses or sustains the other parts; these are divided into the seven following sorts, the *perianthium*, the *involucrum*, the *spatha*, *gluma*, *amentum* or *julus*, *calyptra*, and *volva*.

The

The *perianthium* is the most common sort of flower cup; it is often composed of many parts, or when it is of one part or piece, it is divided or cut half way into more or less parts, this always surrounds the flower.

The *involucrum* or outer cover embraces many flowers, which are collected together and have each their proper *perianthium*. They are disposed in form of rays, and are sometimes coloured, see fig. 1. *a, a, a*. This is often met with in the second order of *Linnaeus's* fifth class.

The *spatha* or sheath is a particular sort of cover to one or several flowers, which seldom are provided with any particular *perianthium*, it consists of a membrane fastened to the stalk, and is of different figures and consistence, see fig. 2. *b, b, b*.

It is sometimes composed of two pieces, as at fig. 2. *c, c*, this often occurs in *Linnaeus's* I. III. VI. and XX. class.

Gluma or chaff, is a sort of cover only belonging to the corns and grasses, these are composed of two or three membranaceous valves, as at fig. 3. *d, d*, which are often transparent on their borders.

A *julus* or *katkin* (*amentum*) is a mass of male or female flowers fastened to an axis in

408 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

form of a rope, being covered with small scales which serve for calyces, see fig. 4. these occur frequently in *Linnaeus's* twenty first class.

The coif (*calyptra*) is a thin membranaceous cover of a conick form, which covers the parts of fructification, and is often met with in many kinds of moss on the top of the flowers.

The purse (*volva*) is a thick sort of covering which incloses several of the mushroom tribe, and opens lengthways to let them out.

II. The petal or flower leaf (*corolla*) is that which immediately surrounds the parts of generation; there are two sorts of these, the petal and the nectarium. When it is of one piece, it is called (*monopetalous*) and when it is of many pieces, *polypetalous*.

The flower leaf, or petal, is generally distinguished by the beauty of its colour, see *e, e, e*, fig. 5. When this is of one piece, it is distinguished by the tube (*tubus*) *b*, and the limb or border (*limbus*) *g*, when the flower is of many petals, each are distinguished by their tail (*unguis*) *l*, and the blade (*lamina*) *i*.

The nectarium is that part of the corolla, which is destined to contain the honey or sweet juice of the flower, and is of different figures,

figures, as a tube, a scale, a pimple, or tubercle, see *f, f, f*, fig. 5.

A floret (*corollula tabulata*) consists of one piece formed in a kind of tube or bell shape, cut at the top into four or five parts which open and turn backward, see fig. 9.

A half floret (*corollula ligulata*) consists of a flat narrow limb or tail turning outward, whose summit is either entire or indented in three or five points, see fig. 10.

III. The stamen is the male part of generation in flowers, and is composed of two parts, the filament and the summit.

The filament (*filamentum*) serves to sustain the summit or apex, this is sometimes in form of a thread, and at others it is awl-shaped.

The summit (*anthera*), or apex, is the essential part of the stamina, or the male organ of generation; it consists of a little bag of one or more cavities, which is commonly fastened to the point of the filament, and contains the male farina.

IV. The pistil (*pistillum*) includes the female parts of generation in flowers, which is composed of the germ (*germen*), the style (*stylus*), and the stigma.

The germ incloses and defends the embryos of the seeds, and is properly the matrix of the plants. The

410 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

The style fits upon the germ and sustains the stigma, but there are some flowers which have no style.

The stigma is the female organ of generation, and is of different figures, it is generally situated upon the extremity of the style, and when there is no style it fits upon the germ.

The Parts of Fruit.

The (*pericarpium*) is formed of the germ which enlarges and incloses the seeds, see *m, n*, fig. 6. it is divided into eight species, the capsule, the shell, the pod, the husk, the nut, the apple, the berry, and the cone.

The capsule is composed of many dry elastic cells, which when the seeds are ripe generally open at the top; when it has but one cell, it is called *unilocularis*, if two *bilocularis*, or if several *multilocularis*.

The shell (*conceptaculum*) is different from a capsule of one cell, in the cover being softer and not so rough, opening lengthways on one side, and the seeds are not fastened to it.

The pod (*siliqua*) fig. 7. is composed of two lids, *o, o*, which open from the base toward the point, separated by a diaphragm or membranous partition, to which the seeds are fastened by an umbilical cord.

A legu-

A leguminous pod (*legumen*) fig. 8. is an oblong cover of two shells joined above and below by a longitudinal suture, the seeds, *q, q*, are fastened alternately to the upper border of each shell. Most of the pulse are of this kind.

A plum (*drupa*) is a fruit composed of a fleshy soft pulp inclosing a nut or stone in the middle.

A berry (*bacca*) incloses many naked seeds in the middle of a succulent pulp.

An apple (*pomum*) is a fruit composed of a solid fleshy pulp, in the middle of which are little cells with membranaceous covers in which the kernels or seeds are inclosed.

A cone (*strobilus*) is a hard dry fruit, generally of a conical form, composed of many scales lying over each other like the tiles of an house, or the scales of fish.

VI. Seeds are also distinguished into two sorts, *viz.* nuts and grains or seeds.

The nut is a fruit with a hard shell, inclosing the true seed.

The seed (*semen*) is of all sorts of figures, and is that part which vegetates and produces a plant of the same kind, with that from which it was taken; the seeds are sometimes adorned with a crown.

The

412 . *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

The crown (*corona*) is either simple as at fig. 11. *t*, or tufted, as at fig. 10 and 11. *x*, *z*, *u*. When the down or tuft fits close upon the seed, without any footstalk, or support as at *u*, it is termed (*sessilis*); but if it has supports, as at *r*, *x*, *s*, *z*, (*stipite insidens*), each of these tufts are again divided into simple and branching, the simple, *u*, *x*, is composed of single rays; and the branching, *u*, *x*, fig. 10 and 11, of bearded or feathered plumes.

The receptacle (*receptaculum*) is the placenta upon which is placed the flower, or fruit, or both together, and is of different figures.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE CLASSES.

Plate V.

Plants have flowers visible or almost invisible, the visible flowers are either hermaphrodite, that is to say, they are each furnished with stamina and pointals; or of one sex, either all male, when they have only stamina and no pointals, or all female, when they have pointals without stamina.

The stamina are either detached from each other, or united together by one of their parts, as also sometimes with the pointal.

The

The stamina are not of equal length, or there are constantly a certain number which are shorter than the rest.

The classes of plants which are established upon the principles of the sexes, are distinguished according to the number, proportion, and the situation of the stamina in their flowers.

The plants which have hermaphrodite flowers.

Fig. 1. (*Monandria*) with one stamen.

Fig. 2. (*Diandria*) two stamina.

Fig. 3. (*Triandria*) three stamina.

Fig. 4. (*Tetrandria*) four stamina.

Fig. 5. (*Pentandria*) five stamina.

Fig. 6. (*Hexandria*) six stamina.

Fig. 7. (*Heptandria*) seven stamina.

Fig. 8. (*Octandria*) eight stamina.

Fig. 9. (*Enneandria*) nine stamina.

Fig. 10. (*Decandria*) ten stamina.

Fig. 11. (*Dodecandria*) twelve stamina.

Fig. 12. (*Icosandria*) when there are more than twelve, and these are fastened to the interior part of the flower cup, and not to the receptaculum.

Fig. 13. (*Polyandria*) when there are more than twelve, which are fastened to the receptaculum.

The

414 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

The plants whose flowers have two stamina shorter than the other, are distinguished in the following manner.

Fig. 14. (*Didynamia*) these flowers have two long and two shorter stamina.

Fig. 15. (*Tetradynamia*) these flowers have four long and two shorter stamina.

Those plants whose flowers have their stamina united together, or with the pointal, are distinguished in the following manner.

Fig. 16. (*Monadelphica*) these have all their stamina united by their tails into one body.

Fig. 17. (*Diadelphica*) These have all their stamina united by their tails into two bodies.

Fig. 18. (*Polyadelphia*) these have all their stamina united by their tails into three or more bodies.

Fig. 19. (*Syngenesia*) these have all their stamina united by their summits in form of a cylinder.

Fig. 20. (*Gynandria*) the stamina of these fit upon the pointal, and not upon the receptaculum.

Those plants whose flowers are of different sexes are thus distinguished.

Fig.

Fig. 21. (*Monœcia*) the plants of this class have male and female flowers upon the same individual.

Fig. 22. (*Diœcia*) these have male and female flowers upon different plants.

Fig. 23. (*Polygamia*) these have hermaphrodite flowers, with flowers of one sex, either male or female upon the same individual.

Those plants whose flowers are inclosed in the fruit, or are so small as not to be seen by the naked eye, are included in the 24th class, intituled *Cryptogamia*, see Fig. 24.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE ORDERS.

The orders or subdivisions of the classes are established upon the pointals, as the classes are upon the stamina, the number of pointals taken to the base of the style, and when there is no style, the stigmas are counted.

The orders of the 13 first classes are,

1. (*Monogynia*) flowers with one pointal.
2. (*Digynia*) those with two pointals.
3. (*Trigynia*) with three pointals.
4. (*Tetragynia*) with four, &c.

When the flower has a great number of pointals, *Polyginia*.

The

416 *Introduction to the Knowledge of*

The 14th Class (*Didynamia*) is divided into the two following orders.

1. (*Gymnospermia*) these have four naked seeds succeeding each flower fitting in the cup.
2. (*Angiospermia*) the seeds of these are inclosed in a cover.

The 15th class, (*Tetradynamia*) is also divided into two orders.

1. (*Siliculosa*) short poded, the *pericarpium* or cover is suborbicular, and garnished with a style of the same length.
2. (*Siliquosa*) long poded, the *pericarpium* of this is long, with a style scarcely seen.

The 19th class (*Syngenesia*) is divided into the five following orders.

(*Polygamia*) is a flower composed of many florets.

1. (*Polygamia æqualis*) is a flower composed of hermaphrodite florets, in the disk and the circumference.
2. (*Polygamia superflua*) the flowers of this order are composed of hermaphrodite florets in the disk, and of female in their circumference.
3. (*Polygamia frustranea*) have flowers composed of hermaphrodite florets in the disk, and of neutral in their circumference.

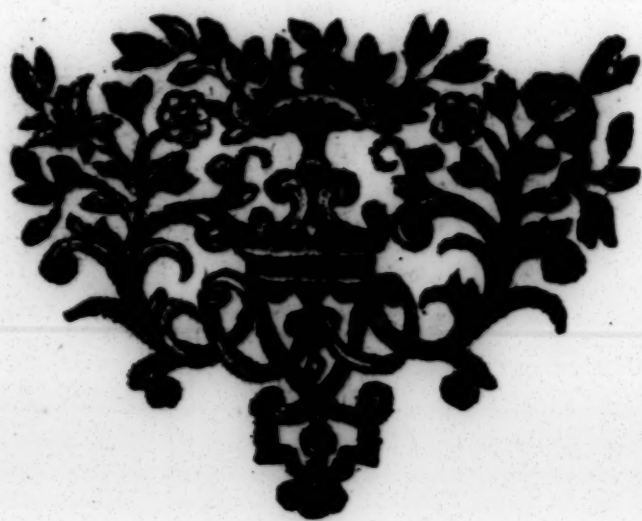
4. *Po-*

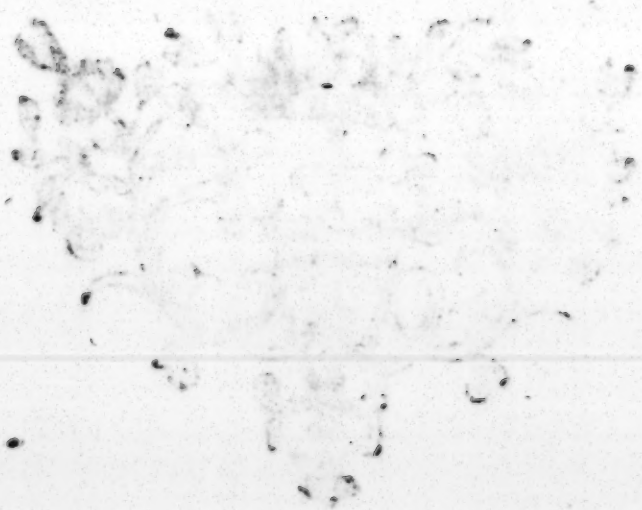
4. (*Polygamia necessaria*) the flowers of this order are composed of male florets in their disk, and of female in their circumference.

5. (*Monogamia*) is a flower which is composed of simple florets.

The sixteenth class (*Monodelphia*), the seventeenth (*Diadelphia*), the eighteenth (*Polyadelphia*), the twentieth (*Gynandria*), the twenty-first (*Monoœcia*), the twenty-second (*Dioœcia*) and the twenty-third (*Polygamia*), establish their orders upon the classical characters of those of the preceding classes.

The last class (*Cryptogamia*), in short is divided into as many orders, as the families which compose it.







I N D E X.

A.



- Cacia 95, 162, 170.
Acanthus 260, 285.
Aconite 27, 61, 186, 285.
Acorn 117, 311, 362.
Adonis 61, 90, 120.
African 91, 170, 186.
Alaternus 62, 126, 153.
Alder 313.
Alifander 76, 194, 241.
Almond 20, 162, 317.
Aloe 35, 36, 71, 166, 201, 262, 366.
Althæa 260.
Alysson 28, 61, 162, 315.
Amaranthus 26, 60, 91, 157, 225.
Amelanchier 163.
Amomum Plinii 37, 97, 100, 202, 367.
Amber tree 167, 231, 324.
Ananas 34, 70, 101, 131, 168, 200, 233, 263, 326, 349, 367.
Androsace 162.
Anemony 21, 23, 58, 61, 87, 88, 124, 187, 256, 282, 283, 284, 313, 345, 362.
Angelica 241.
Anonis 163.
Antholyza 73, 103, 170, 198.
Apocynum 170, 231, 285, 315, 327.
Apple 14, 20, 55, 64, 84, 86, 116, 150, 249, 304, 339.
Apricock 83, 113, 145, 148, 150, 179, 183, 303.
April 104.
Arbutus 92, 152, 286, 318, 323.
Arctotis 36, 196, 231, 324.
Artichoke 41, 79, 110, 141, 209, 242, 300, 330, 331, 352.
Arum 28, 126, 162, 169, 170, 261.
Asarabacca 28, 62, 161.
Asarum, see Asarabacca.
Asarina 162.
Ascyrum 36.
Ash 61, 94, 162.
Asparagus 3, 8, 43, 46, 47, 50, 78, 178, 208, 244, 272, 295, 301, 331, 334, 355.
Asphodel 132, 160, 314.
After 87, 157, 190, 286, 314, 326.
Astragalus 121, 315.
Araphaxis 170.
Avens 162, 164.
August 238.

I N D E X.

Auricula 24, 27, 56, 88, 123,
124, 157, 224, 253, 256,
284.

B.

Balsamine 60, 122, 155, 157,
186, 225, 255.

Barley 81.

Bassella 36, 202, 265.

Baum 77, 144, 302.

Bay 92, 94, 98, 99, 128,
152.

Beach 311.

Beans 1, 2, 4, 11, 38, 39,
42, 48, 75, 108, 136, 208,
273, 297, 332, 355.

Beets 13, 38, 46, 51, 76,
140, 172, 244, 334.

Bellflower, see Campanula.

Benjamin tree 94, 127.

Berberry 127.

Berries 64.

Betony 164, 193.

Bilberry 127.

Bird Cherry 162, 318.

Birthwort 28, 161, 170.

Bistort 28, 160.

Bladdernut 162, 318.

Borecole 12, 50.

Borrage 76, 164.

Box tree 62.

Box edging 59, 221, 282,
315.

Broccoli 12, 50, 142, 143,
174, 176, 205, 210, 243,
274, 300.

Brooklime 94, 128, 163.

Bryony 28.

Buckthorn 94, 163, 318.

Budding 130, 183, 212.

Bugloss 28, 76, 161, 164.

Bugule 128.

Bulbs 158, 187, 220, 321,
342.

Bupthalmum 87, 159, 161,
314.

Burnet 12, 51, 76, 164, 173.

C.

Cabbage 8, 9, 12, 38, 41,
46, 75, 108, 109, 137, 141,
143, 171, 205, 208, 239,
244, 270, 295.

Calendula or Marygold 40.

Caltha, see Calendula.

Camomile 77, 194, 283, 314.

Campanula 36, 57, 87, 89,
161, 189, 198, 314.

Candy-tuft 90, 103, 155, 170,
326.

Canna 103.

Canterbury-bell 57, 87, 90,
121, 156, 189, 314, 343.

Caper 165, 193, 237, 315.

Capficum 79, 144, 155, 186.

Cardoons 12, 80, 176, 269,
296.

Carnation 25, 55, 87, 121,
122, 123, 156, 157, 186,
188, 220, 222, 252, 281.

Carob 128.

Carragana 163.

Carrot 1, 8, 10, 11, 12, 38,
46, 50, 82, 140, 143, 172,
205, 270, 274, 297, 301,
333, 356.

Carthamus 121, 260.

Cassia 266.

Cassine 92, 117.

Catalpa 261, 318.

Catchfly

I N D E X.

- Catchfly 57, 90, 257, 283.
 Cauliflower 5, 6, 40, 47, 75,
 108, 136, 137, 139, 171,
 173, 204, 239, 268, 270,
 272, 273, 295, 297.
 Cedar 92, 95, 97, 116, 117,
 119, 152.
 Celastrus 103, 167, 170,
 324.
 Celery 3, 4, 12, 45, 50, 75,
 107, 110, 137, 174, 205,
 209, 242, 246, 270, 274,
 296, 354.
 Cerasus, see Cherry.
 Cercis 95.
 Cereus 35, 103, 166, 170,
 197, 231, 262, 265, 366.
 Cestrum 36, 170, 266.
 Chamælaea 1.
 Cherry 64, 150, 151, 162,
 217, 318.
 Chervil 12, 76, 164, 271.
 Chestnut 64, 162, 318.
 Chinquapin 95.
 Chironia 170, 324.
 Chrysanthemum 159, 320.
 Cinquefoil 162, 318.
 Cistus 92, 94, 99, 128, 162,
 163, 315, 326.
 Citron 100, 170, 189.
 Cives 41, 80.
 Clary 173, 177, 247.
 Claytonia 162.
 Clematis 163.
 Cliffortia 326.
 Clover 81.
 Clutia 170.
 Coccygia 193, 318.
 Cockscornb, 26.
 Coffee 34, 70, 102, 132, 170,
 265, 368.
 Colchicum 125, 154, 283.
 Coleworts 12, 82, 205, 241,
 270, 271, 299.
 Colutea 162, 344.
 Columbine 57, 87, 90, 121,
 156, 163, 221, 314.
 Compost 23, 135, 167, 344,
 368.
 Convolvulus 90, 120, 122,
 156, 189, 255.
 Conyza 196.
 Cornflag 161, 198.
 Cornfallet 40, 207, 241.
 Coral-tree 73, 133, 327.
 Coriander 12, 50.
 Corona Regalis 73.
 Coronilla 163.
 Cotyledon 33, 71, 165, 170,
 197, 324.
 Covering 74, 75.
 Cowslip 128.
 Crassula 36, 133, 170, 197.
 Cress 3, 12, 45, 50, 80, 175,
 207, 271.
 Crinum 36 170.
 Crocus 93, 154, 158, 186,
 256.
 Crown Imperial 23, 93, 187,
 254, 283.
 Cucumber 2, 6, 7, 16, 26, 43,
 74, 79, 104, 108, 138, 142,
 173, 176, 205, 209, 243.
 Cunonia 103, 170, 198.
 Currant 14, 54, 65, 86, 217,
 275, 278, 306, 307, 313,
 339.
 Cyanus 160.
 Cyclamen 23, 36, 61, 93,
 155, 167, 186, 198, 256,
 283, 325.
 Cypress

I N D E X.

Cypress 29, 62, 92, 116, 117,
152.
Cytifus 102, 116, 162, 317,
326.

D.

Daffodil 93.
Daify 57, 87, 128, 159, 160,
162, 283, 314.
Dames Gilliflower 189.
Dens Canis 186, 220.
December 352.
Digging 1, 27.
Dill 76, 247.
Diosma 36, 170, 324.
Dogwood 95, 97, 163, 193.
Doria 196, 326.
Doronicum 314.
Dragon 29, 160, 194.
Dropwort 29.
Ducksfoot 126.
Dumb Cane 133.
Dung 2, 15, 16, 26, 29, 47,
72, 341, 353.

E.

Elecampane 347, 365.
Elder 194.
Elichrysum 196, 324.
Elm 62, 312.
Endive 4, 5, 10, 12, 76, 135,
175, 205, 209, 240, 240,
242, 271, 354.
Eringo 29, 314, 347.
Eschalot 207.
Espalier 13, 16, 51, 113, 145,
211, 213, 337.
Evergreens 30, 58, 63, 92,
94, 118, 125, 153, 184, 251.

Euphorbium 35, 71, 166,
197, 203, 231, 262, 265.
Euonymus 163.
Exoticks 65, 66, 71, 96, 97,
132, 157, 165, 184, 291,
342, 348, 367.

F.

Fabago 170, 196.
February 38.
Fennel 29, 76, 241, 347.
Fern 29.
Feverfew 161, 283, 314.
Fibrous roots 87.
Ficoides 26, 71, 165, 169,
197, 324, 366.
Fiddlewood 327.
Fig-tree 51, 115, 247, 250,
337.
Figwort 160.
Filbert 250.
Finochia 81, 110, 140, 174,
175, 246.
Fir 62, 116, 119, 152, 219,
280.
Flax 81, 110.
Flowers in bloom 27, 36, 61,
72.
Flowers annual 90.
Flowering trees and shrubs
27, 30, 62.
Flower Garden work 13, 55,
87, 154, 280, 313, 342.
Flower fence 36.
Forest tree 31, 62, 118, 251,
279.
Foxglove 57, 133, 156, 161,
189, 194, 221, 315.
Fraxinella 87, 160, 285, 343.

French

I N D E X.

French Honeysuckle 57, 121, 314.

Frittillary 186, 187, 220, 256, 316.

Fruit-trees 14, 15, 30, 49, 52, 53, 84, 85, 112, 113, 115, 149, 179, 181, 213, 215, 279, 305, 337, 338.

Fruit Garden work 13, 51, 83, 112, 145, 179, 211, 247, 275, 303, 337, 358.

Fruits in prime 20, 55, 86, 116, 150, 182, 216, 249, 277, 309, 340, 360.

Fumitory 135, 260, 315.

G.

Garden, Pleasure, the work 21, 55, 120, &c.

Garden, Kitchen, the work 1, 38, &c.

Garlick 12, 41, 242.

Gelder Rose 162, 317.

Gentian 161, 343.

Gentianella 57, 257, 285.

Geranium 36, 66, 167, 231, 285, 315, 324.

Gladiolus 36, 324.

Golden Rod 57, 87, 286, 343.

Gooseberry 14, 54, 65, 86, 217, 275, 278, 306, 313, 339.

Gourd 142, 247.

Grafting 14, 52, 64, 84, 96, 112, 118, 130.

Granadilla 165, 170, 184, 234, 351.

Grape 20, 250, 305.

Grass 59, 60, 159, 345.

Gravel walks 59, 120, 160, 346.

Green-house 31, 66, 72, 98, 128, 130, 164, 195, 230, 262, 289, 324, 347, 366.

H.

Hamamelis 61.

Hæmanthus 133, 170, 327.

Haulm 14, 21, 331, 362.

Haw 95, 162, 163, 311, 318.

Hazle 61.

Hedges 2, 30, 39, 77, 335, 353, 362.

Heliotrope 133, 169, 326.

Hellebore 27, 28, 61.

Hemp 81, 110.

Henbane 29, 347, 365.

Hepatica 57, 87.

Herb Paris 163.

Hermannia 169, 196, 231, 324.

Hieracium 87, 120.

Hogs dung 16.

Holly 63, 92, 96, 97, 117, 152, 311.

Hollyhock 156, 220, 314.

Hollow root 93.

Honesty 161, 315.

Honeysuckle 57, 59, 61, 87, 121, 162, 313, 316, 344.

Honeywort 127.

Hops 49, 110.

Hot-bed 2, 9, 10, 17, 60, 67, 71, 79, 91, 100, 121, 157, 165, 335, 355.

Housleek 133, 194.

Hyacinth 21, 22, 23, 25, 61, 87, 124, 160, 198, 220,

I N D E X.

254, 281, 316, 321, 345,
362.

Hypericum 260, 344.

Hyssop, 12, 50, 77, 80, 140,
172, 173, 194, 241.

I.

Jacea 120, 224, 314.

Jacobæa 231.

January 1.

Jasmine 36, 59, 130, 165,
221, 234, 260, 262, 324,
344.

Jerusalem Artichoke 46, 47.

Inoculating 221, 262.

Insects 172.

Jonquil 321.

Iris 23, 61, 158, 161, 186,
220, 256, 283, 285, 343.

Jujube 170.

July 204.

June 171.

Juniper 95, 97, 117, 152.

Ivy 128, 163.

Ixia, 37 73, 170, 198, 324.

K.

Kalmia 261.

Kernels 53, 100, 307.

Kidney-bean 44, 80, 105,
136, 204.

Ketmia 26, 202, 260, 327.

Kiggelaria 170, 203, 267.

Kitchen Garden products 12,
50, 82, 111, 144, 178,
211, 246, 274, 303, 336,
357.

Kitchen Garden work 1, 38,

74, 104, 134, 171, 204,
295, 330, 352.

L.

Laburnum 58, 162, 317, 344.

Ladies mantle 160, 194.

Ladies Slipper 160.

Larch-tree 95.

Larkspur 60, 224.

Lavatera 37, 90, 120, 170,
203.

Lavendar 77, 140, 172, 177,
194, 241, 245, 270.

Lavendar Cotton 77, 106.

Laurel 126, 128, 278, 286,
312.

Laurustinus 28, 99, 126, 128,
260, 286, 312, 318.

Layers 62, 65, 153, 312.

Lazarole 95.

Leaves decayed, 5, 24, 32,
66, 232, 348, 349, 354.

Leeks 8, 12, 46, 50, 106, 140,
143, 172, 178, 244.

Lemon 37, 100, 170, 189.

Lentiscus 167, 202, 324, 325.

Leonurus 36, 231, 257, 324,
367.

Leopardsbane 127, 160.

Lettuce 1, 11, 12, 38, 45,
50, 77, 107, 140, 175, 210,
240, 241, 269, 272, 296,
356.

Leucanthemum 87, 169.

Lilac 58, 162, 312, 317, 344.

Lilly 159, 160, 163, 187, 198,
199, 220, 254, 256.

Lime 62, 170, 312.

Linaria 121.

Liquo-

I N D E X.

Liquorice, 29, 42.
 Litter 14.
 Liverwort 62, 94.
 Lotus 36, 121, 169, 170, 202,
 324.
 London Pride 160, 283, 314,
 343.
 Lovage 241, 365.
 Love Apple 91, 186, 261.
 Lucern 81.
 Lungwort 161, 164.
 Lupine 120, 156, 224, 260.
 Lycium 133, 170, 324.
 Lychnidea 157, 189, 315.
 Lychnis 57, 89, 90, 91, 120,
 155, 157, 220, 222, 257,
 343.
 Lyfimachia 249, 315.

M.

Madder 29.
 Magnolia 92, 117, 260, 326.
 Maiden Hair 28, 62.
 Mallow 37, 90, 120, 162,
 193.
 Malpighia 36, 170, 203, 327,
 368.
 Mandrake 161, 164.
 Maple 94, 128, 163, 311,
 318.
 March 74.
 Marigold 36, 76, 91, 122,
 155, 173, 177, 186.
 Marjoram 51, 80, 105, 173.
 Martagon 161, 254, 256.
 Marvel of Peru 91, 122, 155,
 186.
 Marum 140.
 Mast 64.
 Masterwort 241.

Mastick 140, 245.
 Maudlin 161, 194.
 May 134.
 Medicinal Plants 28, 62, 94,
 128, 163, 193, 229, 261,
 288, 323, 347.
 Medlar 20, 95, 163.
 Melianthus 128, 133, 202,
 231.
 Melon 16, 43, 44, 74, 79,
 104, 105, 138, 173, 174,
 177, 208, 243.
 Melongena 26.
 Melon Thistle 35, 71.
 Mezereon 28, 318.
 Mint 9, 12, 77, 109, 177,
 301, 302.
 Moldavica 121.
 Molle 324.
 Moly 160.
 Monarda 315.
 Moon Trefoil 92.
 Moss 14, 57, 62, 90, 343.
 Mullein 160, 193.
 Mulch 96, 125, 153, 183,
 206, 338, 341, 361.
 Mushroom 4, 12, 44, 50,
 269, 301, 357.
 Mustard 3, 45, 50, 80, 107,
 175, 271.
 Myrtle 66, 98, 99, 128, 163,
 165, 196, 231, 289, 326,
 367.

N.

Narcissus, 22, 28, 61, 158,
 220, 256, 321.
 Nasturtium 36, 90, 120,
 324.
 Neats dung 130.

Nect-

I N D E X.

Nectarine 83, 146, 148, 180,
183, 217, 250, 303, 337.

Nettle 94, 163, 261.

November 330.

Nursery work, 29, 62, 94,
116, 151, 183, 251, 278,
309, 340 361.

Nuts 20.

O.

Oaks 116, 117.

October 295.

Oleander 128, 166, 326, 367.

Olive 128, 326.

Omphalodes 161.

Onion 12, 76, 106, 140, 143,
172, 205, 238, 242, 297,
298, 334.

Onobrychis 161.

Orange 32, 37, 41, 42, 66,
67, 68, 69, 98, 99, 100,
128, 129, 164, 189, 262,
265, 289.

Orchis 29, 161.

Ornithogalum 103, 133, 161,
198.

Orobus 160.

Othonna 103, 133, 169, 196.

P.

Palma Christi 186.

Pancratium 36, 154, 155,
170.

Papaya 36, 170.

Parsley 12, 29, 38, 40, 76,
78, 109, 334.

Parsnep 8, 38, 46, 106, 140,
143, 172, 244, 334.

Passiflora, or Passion-flower
193, 202, 346.

Peaches 83, 145, 140, 183,
217, 249, 303, 317, 337.

Pears 14, 20, 52, 55, 64, 75,
116, 150, 216, 249, 304,
337, 339.

Pease 1, 4, 11, 38, 39, 42,
48, 81, 90, 110, 120, 136,
156, 208, 257, 273, 297,
332, 355.

Penny Royal 77, 193.

Perivinkle 28, 61, 127, 161.

Perfimon, or Pishamin 94,
163.

Peterwort 315.

Phillyrea 62, 92, 116, 126,
153, 313.

Phlomis 128, 167, 170, 202,
261.

Phyllis 36, 72, 167, 324.

Physalis, see Alkekengi.

Pilewort 29, 315.

Pine 29, 62, 94, 116, 117,
119, 152, 185, 219, 280.

Piony 29, 160, 162, 254,
285, 314, 343.

Pinks 57, 91, 122, 156, 159,
161, 186, 220, 223, 253,
281.

Pistachia-nut 95, 163, 193.

Plane 95, 163, 313.

Plants in flower 27, 36, 61,
72, 93, 102, 126, 130,
132, 160, 168, 190, 202,
225, 235, 258, 266, 286,
293, 321, 346, 350, 364.

Plants, medicinal 28, 62, 94,
163.

Plants, succulent 33, 201, 262,
265, 289.

Pleasure Garden work 21, 55,
120, 186, 220, 252, 362.

Plums

I N D E X.

Plums 52, 64, 217, 250,
304.
Polyanthes 329.
Polyanthus 27, 28, 56, 61,
93, 123, 221, 254, 256,
283, 284.
Polygala 132, 166, 169, 202.
Pomegranate 165, 189, 202,
261.
Pomum Amoris, or Tomata
91.
Poplar 94, 164, 313.
Poppy 90, 160, 193, 315.
Potatoe 12, 46, 334.
Primrose 28, 94, 128, 221,
254, 283.
Privet 127.
Protea 327.
Pruning 14, 51, 83, 303, 304,
337.
Ptelea 192.
Pulsatella 161, 256.
Purslane 49, 79, 81, 112, 136.
Pyracantha 116, 163.

Q.

Quamoclit 255, 266.
Quick-beam 318.

R.

Radish 1, 3, 10, 39, 45, 50,
79, 80, 106, 107, 128, 137,
175, 209, 245, 356.
Raged Robin 57, 87, 161,
257, 283, 315.
Ragwort 161, 346.
Rampion 12.
Ranunculus 21, 23, 58, 87,
124, 187, 255, 282, 283,
284, 313, 345.

Rape 3, 12, 45, 50, 80, 107,
175, 245.
Raspberry 14, 17, 54, 85,
276, 306, 318, 339.
Rauwolfia 133, 170.
Reeds 49, 335.
Rocambole 12, 41, 50, 80,
111, 207, 242.
Rocket 161, 343.
Rose 162, 189, 221, 311,
312, 316.
Rose Campion 57, 89, 221,
257, 283, 315, 343.
Rose root 126.
Rosemary 51, 77, 140, 163,
172, 241, 270.
Roenia 170.
Rue 106.
Ruyschiana 260, 315.
Rye 81.

S.

Saffron 125, 154, 186.
Sage 12, 77, 140, 160, 163,
172, 177, 245.
Saintfoin 81.
Salsafy 12, 39, 50, 112, 142,
334.
Sallet herbs 39, 45, 50, 75,
80, 210, 245, 299, 332,
353.
Sassafras 97.
Savory 12, 40, 50, 77, 105,
144, 172, 241.
Savoy 9, 12, 45, 46, 50, 109,
137, 142, 143, 171, 243,
354.
Saxifrage 29, 61.
Scabious 159, 167, 169, 189,
220, 257.
Scallion

I - N - D - E - X.

Scallion 41.
 Scorzonera 12, 39, 50, 142,
 334, 347, 365.
 Scurvy Grass 164.
 Securigera 121.
 Sedum 33, 71, 165, 202, 366.
 Seeds 26, 71, 97, 245.
 Senna 58, 72, 260, 317.
 Senecio 72.
 September 268.
 Service 20, 163.
 Sesseli 241.
 Shallot 12, 41, 50, 80.
 Sisyrinchium 73, 133, 198,
 324.
 Skirret 12, 29, 39, 77, 142,
 347, 365.
 Smallage 28, 76.
 Snowdrop 28, 61, 158, 186.
 Solanum 170, 325, 327.
 Soldanella 61.
 Solomons Seal 29, 286, 365.
 Sorrel 12, 37, 50, 76, 163,
 166, 173, 324.
 Southernwood 77.
 Spignel 29, 365.
 Spinach 11, 38, 50, 75, 76,
 79, 137, 205, 207, 238,
 246.
 Spindle-tree 128.
 Spiræa 128, 163, 261, 317,
 344.
 Sprouts 50.
 Spleenwort 28.
 Squills 198.
 Stoechas 163, 172, 194, 245,
 261, 270.
 Starwort 57, 69, 73, 122,
 155, 261.
 Stocks 29, 31, 64, 84, 118,
 152, 218, 306.

Stock Gillyflower 90, 91, 121,
 155, 157, 160, 220, 257.
 Stonecrop 164, 194.
 Stone fruit 53.
 Stove, work to be done 31,
 66, 98.
 Stramonium 26, 60, 91, 255.
 Strawberry 17, 54, 85, 114,
 151, 217, 276, 306, 339.
 Sultan flower 90, 91, 122,
 155, 159, 186, 257.
 Sumach 163, 196, 261, 318.
 Sunflower 87, 90, 314.
 Swallowwort 28, 259.
 Sweet William 57, 87, 121,
 156, 186, 220, 223, 252,
 253, 281, 314.
 Syringa 192, 344.

T.

Tamarisk 261.
 Tan 21, 35, 69, 71, 100.
 Tansy 9, 50, 73, 77, 164,
 301.
 Tarragon 12, 50, 77, 109,
 302.
 Tetragona 133, 326.
 Teucrium 133.
 Thalictrum 160, 314.
 Thorn Apple 178, 261.
 Thorn Christ's, see Mespilus.
 Thrift 87, 283, 314.
 Thyme 12, 50, 77, 80, 105,
 173.
 Tithymal 327.
 Tobacco 186, 261.
 Toad-flax 133, 161.
 Tomatoe 79, 143.

Tools

I N D E X.

Tools 2, 345, 364.
 Torch Thistle, see Cereus.
 Tormentil 29, 347.
 Tragacantha 160.
 Travellers Joy 61, 94, 260.
 Trees, Exotick 65, 96.
 Trees and Shrubs in flower
 28, 62, 94, 127, 162, 192,
 228, 260, 288, 323, 346,
 365.
 Trenching 30, 47, 63.
 Tuberoſe 60, 122, 158,
 200.
 Tulip 23, 28, 58, 87, 124,
 188, 255, 281, 282, 284,
 313, 316.
 Tulip-tree 95, 117, 260.
 Tupelo 117.
 Turnep, 3 21, 45, 50, 107,
 108, 142, 174, 175, 245,
 246.
 Turnera 73, 169, 266.
 Turpentine-tree 127, 326.

V.

Valerian 29, 221.
 Valerian, the Greek 156,
 161.
 Venus Looking-glaſs 90, 120,
 155.
 Venus Navelwort 61, 90, 120,
 155, 224, 257.
 Veronica 160, 161, 343.
 Viburnum 163, 327.

Vine 14, 96, 113, 114, 147,
 149, 150, 181, 215, 337.
 Violet 61, 94, 315.
 Virgins-bower 153, 184, 260,
 317.
 Volkhameria 267, 327.

W.

Walls 13, 39, 353.
 Wallflower 61, 91, 121, 157,
 160, 220, 343.
 Walnut 95.
 Waltheria 133.
 Water 70, 77, 148, 164, 166,
 206.
 Watſonia 73, 103, 170, 198,
 324.
 Wheat 81.
 Whitlow graſs 94, 128.
 Wilderneſs work 59, 89, 220,
 225, 310, 345, 363.
 Woad 164.
 Wolfsbane 87, 323.
 Woodroof 128, 164.
 Wormwood 77, 99, 128.

X.

Xeranthemum 224, 257.

Y.

Yew 92, 97, 116, 311.

F I N I S.

BOOKS Printed for JOHN RIVINGTON, C. HITCH
and L. HAWES, R. BALDWIN, J. RICHARDSON,
T. LONGMAN, A. MILLAR, J. WHISTON and
B. WHITE, G. HAWKINS, J. HINTON, W. JOHN-
STON, S. CROWDER, B. LAW, T. CASLON, and
J. DODSLEY.

I. THE GARDENERS DICTIONARY. Con-
taining, The best and newest Method of Cultivating and
Improving the KITCHEN, FRUIT, FLOWER GARDEN, and
NURSERY, as also for performing the Practical Parts of
AGRICULTURE: Including the Management of VINEYARDS,
with the Methods of making and preserving the WINE, ac-
cording to the present Practice of the most skilful Vignerons
in the Wine Countries in EUROPE. Together with Direc-
tions for propagating and improving from real Practice and
Experience, all Sorts of TIMBER TREES. The Seventh
Edition, revised, much enlarged, and altered according to
the latest System of BOTANY; and embellished with several
COPPER-PLATES, which were not in the former Editions.
By PHILIP MILLER, F.R.S. Gardener to the Wor-
shipful Company of APOTHECARIES, at their Botanick Gar-
den in Chelsea, and Member of the Botanick Society at FLO-
RENCE. Price Three Guineas bound in One very large
Volume Folio, or Three Pounds Six Shillings bound in Two
Volumes.

II. A Set of Figures of the Plants, adapted to the GAR-
DENERS DICTIONARY, accurately engraven on 300 Copper-
Plates. In which every Plant is drawn from Nature, and not
copied from the Works of others, nor taken from withered
Fragments of Plants; but made from the growing Plants,
when in their best State of Flowering; to which their Fruits,
or Seed-vessels, are added, when at Maturity: So that the
several Parts of the Plants are exactly delineated, by which a
just Representation of them is given; an Advantage of which
few Performances of this kind can boast. In two Volumes
Folio, Price Twelve Guineas coloured, or Six Guineas not
coloured.

*Such Persons as do not chuse to purchase this valuable Work
altogether, may have it One Number at a Time, containing Six
Plates and One printed Sheet, describing the same, for Five
Shillings coloured, or Two and Six-pence plain, until they have
the whole Work, which consists of Fifty Numbers.*

Pl. I.

Fig. 1.

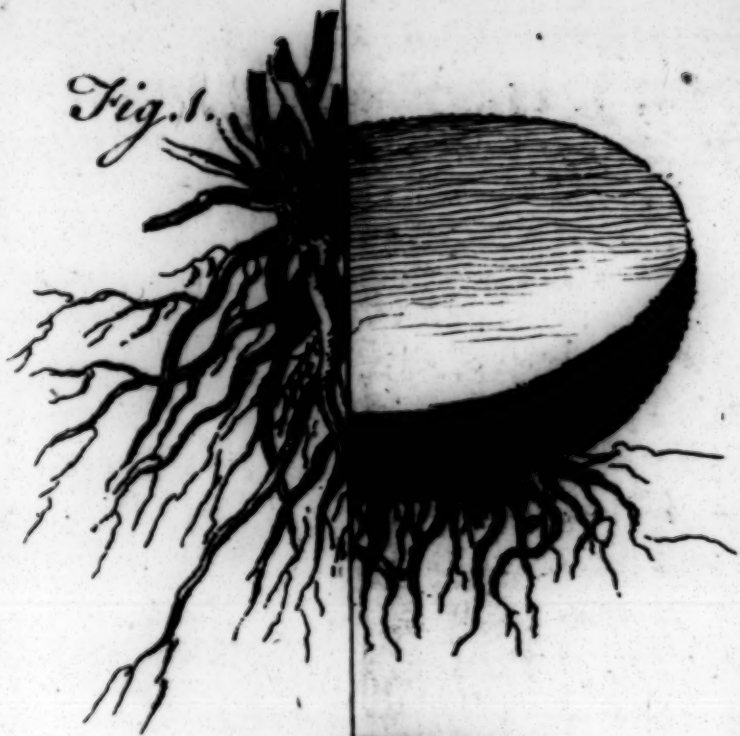


Fig. 5.



Fig.



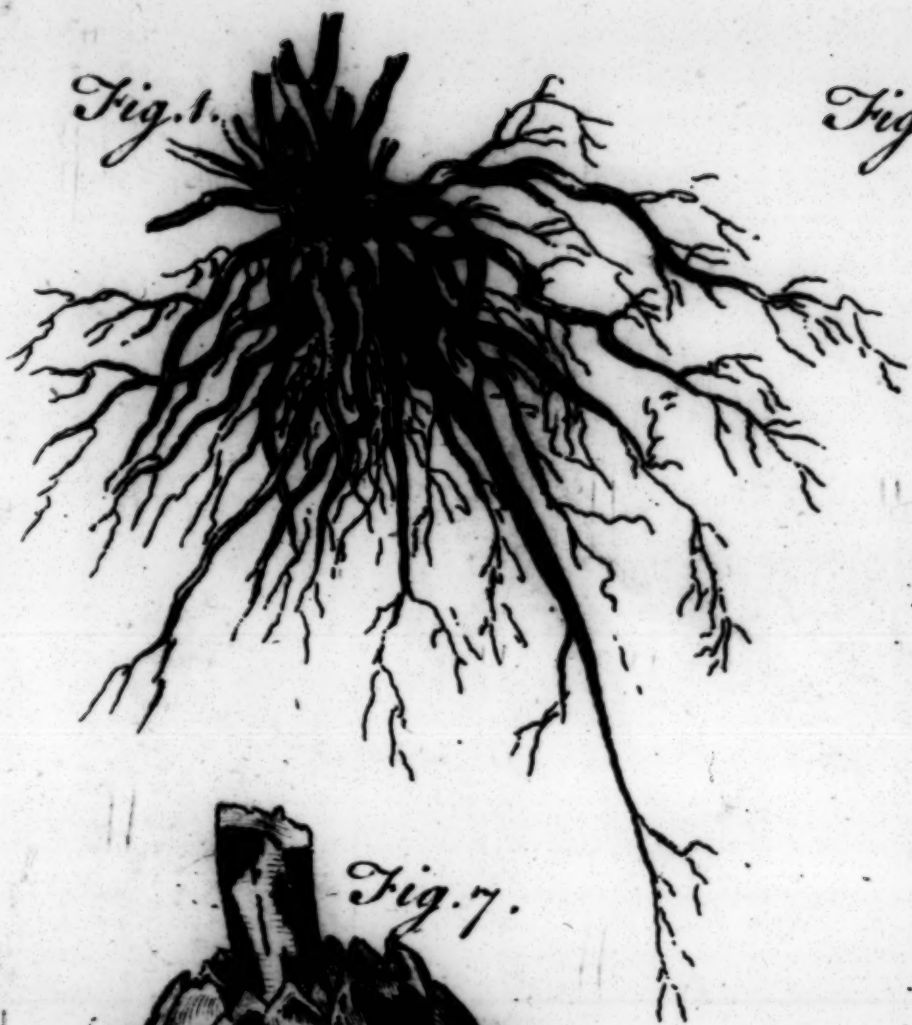


Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 7.



Fig. 8.



Fig. 9.

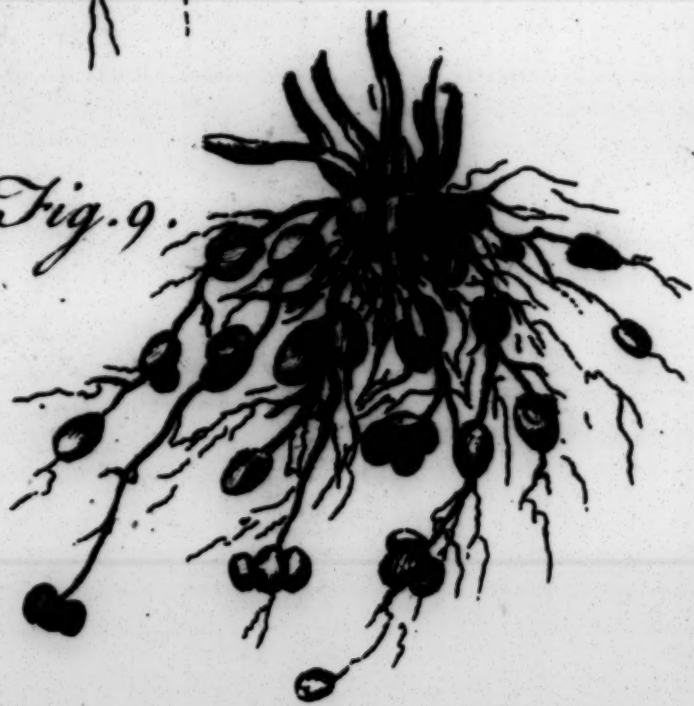


Fig. 10.



Fig. 4.

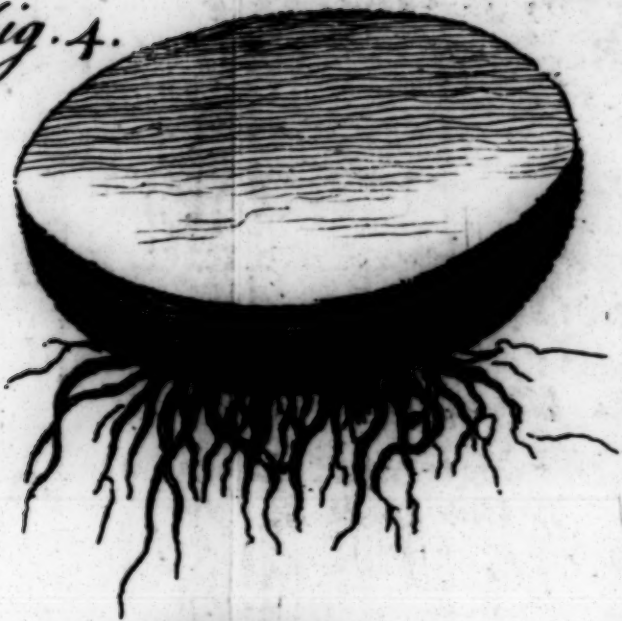


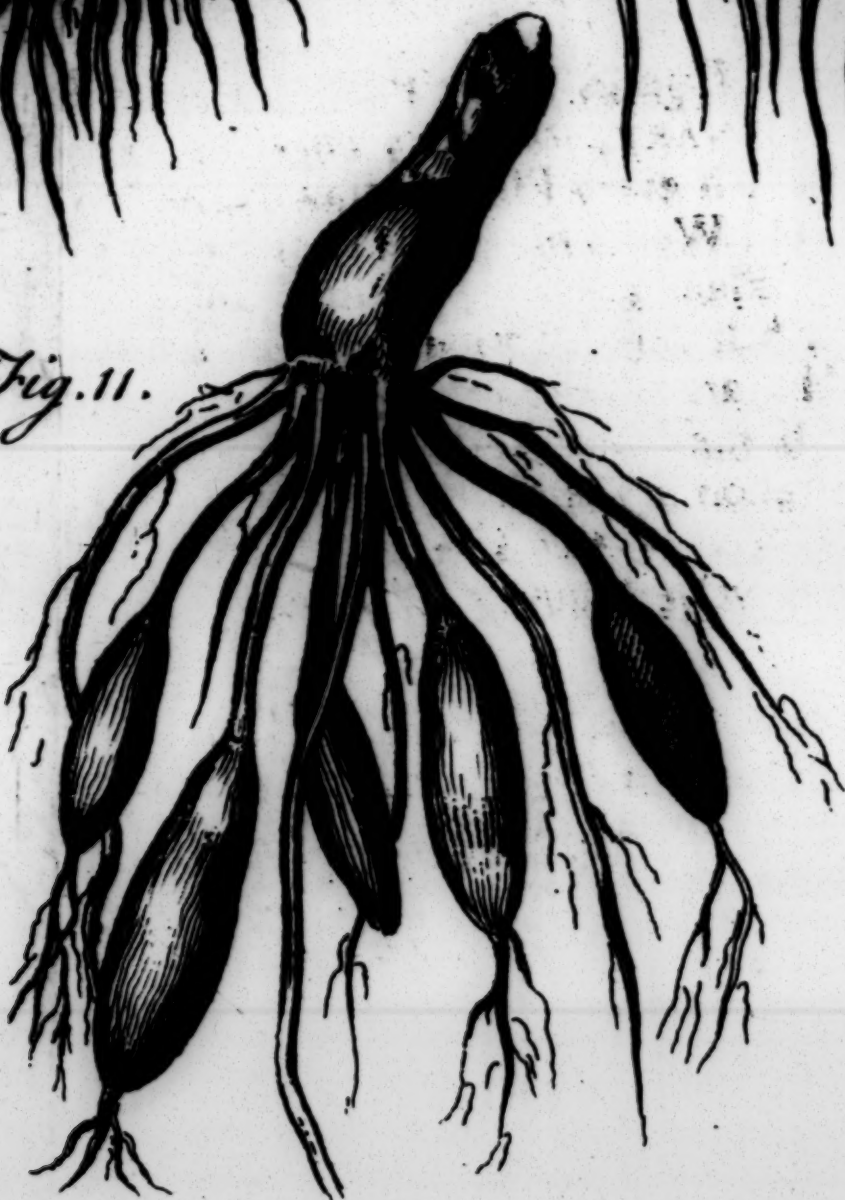
Fig. 5.



Fig. 6.



Fig. 11.





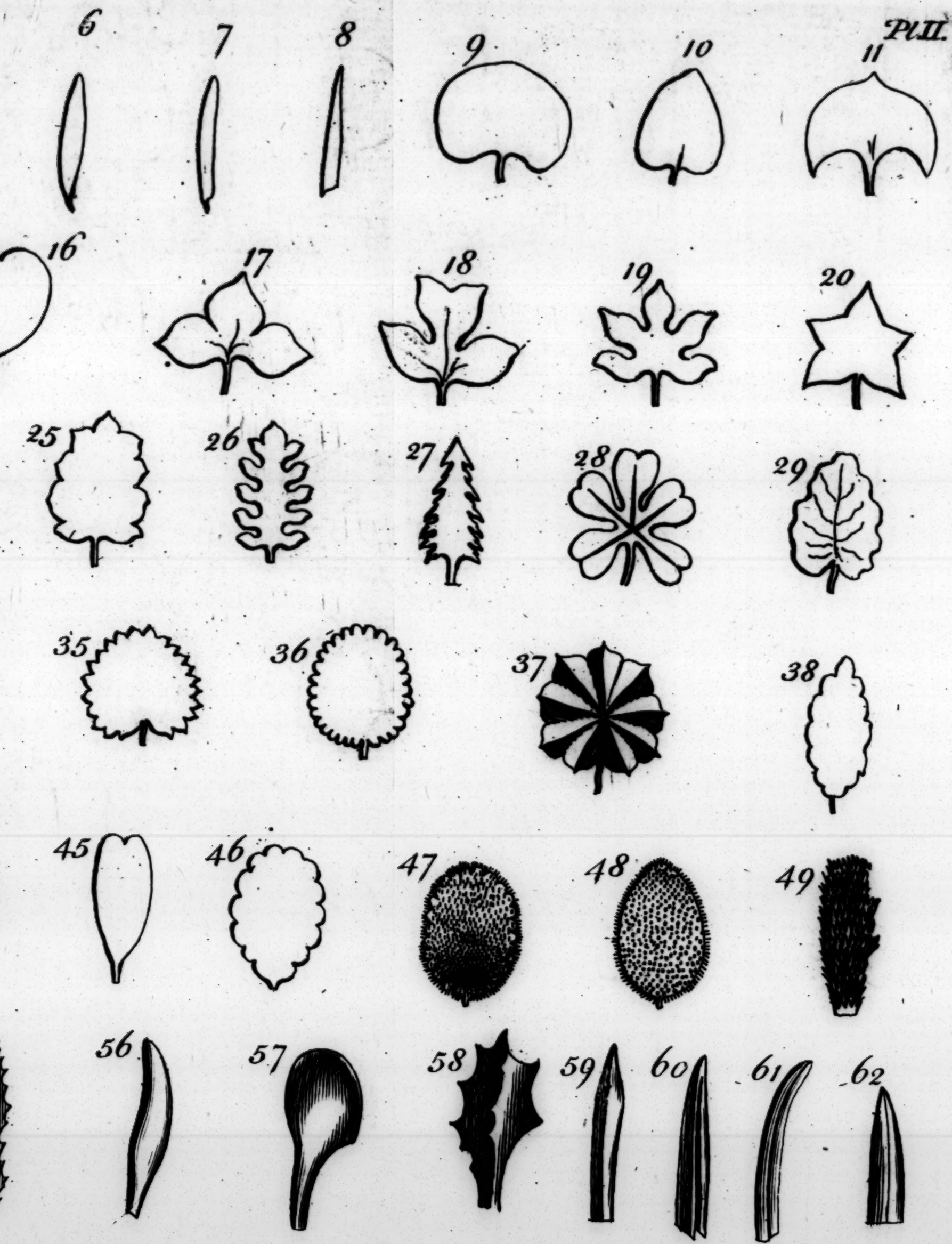


Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 4.



Fig. 11.

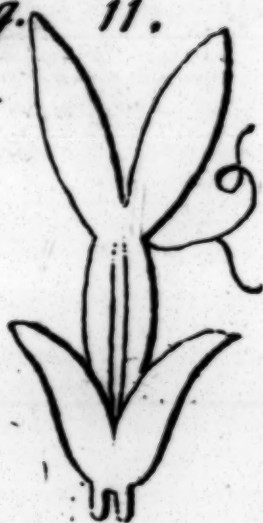


Fig. 12.



Fig. 13.

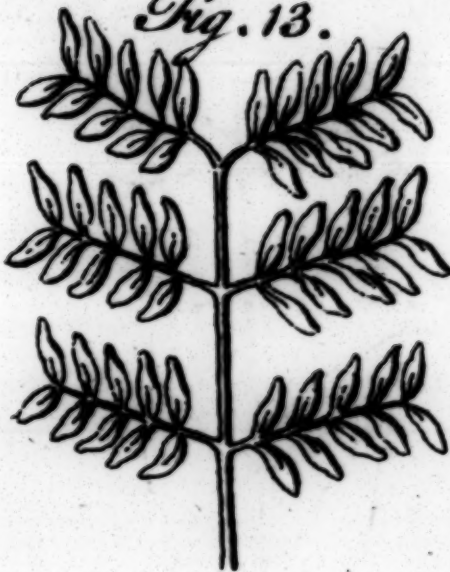


Fig. 14.



Fig. 18.

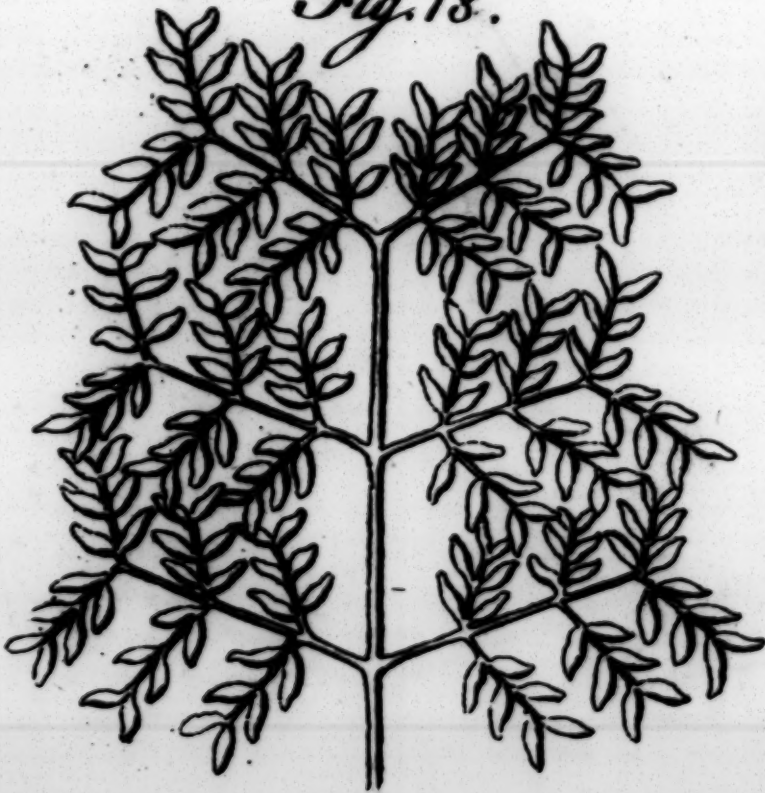


Fig. 18.

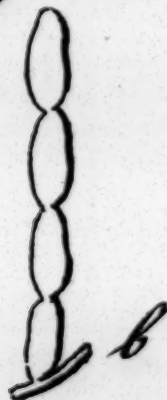
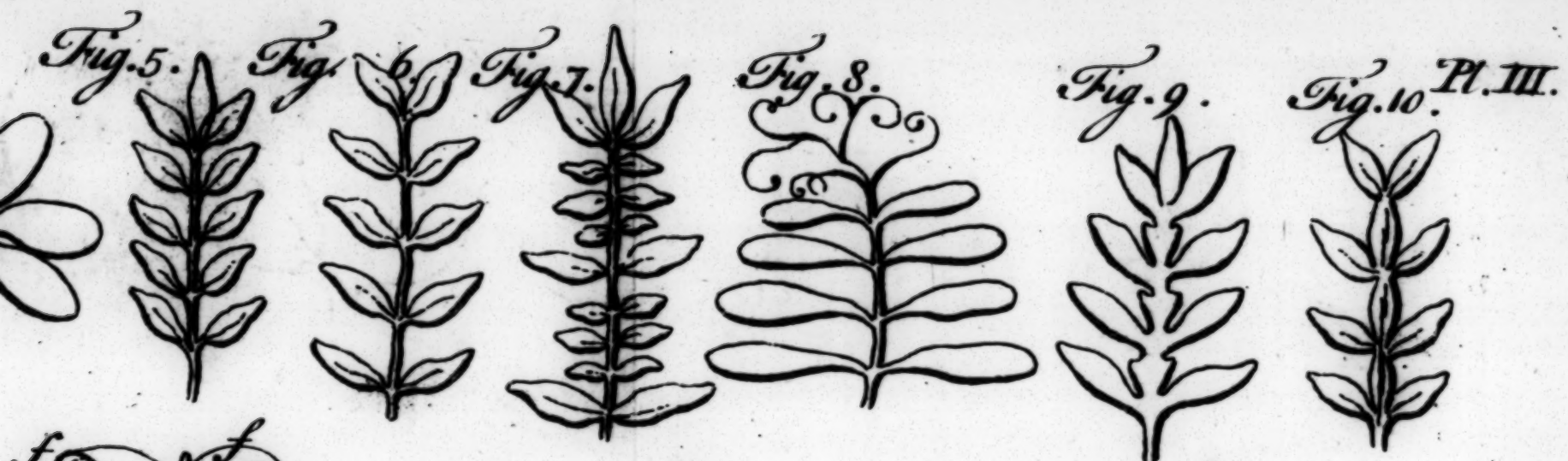


Fig. 19.



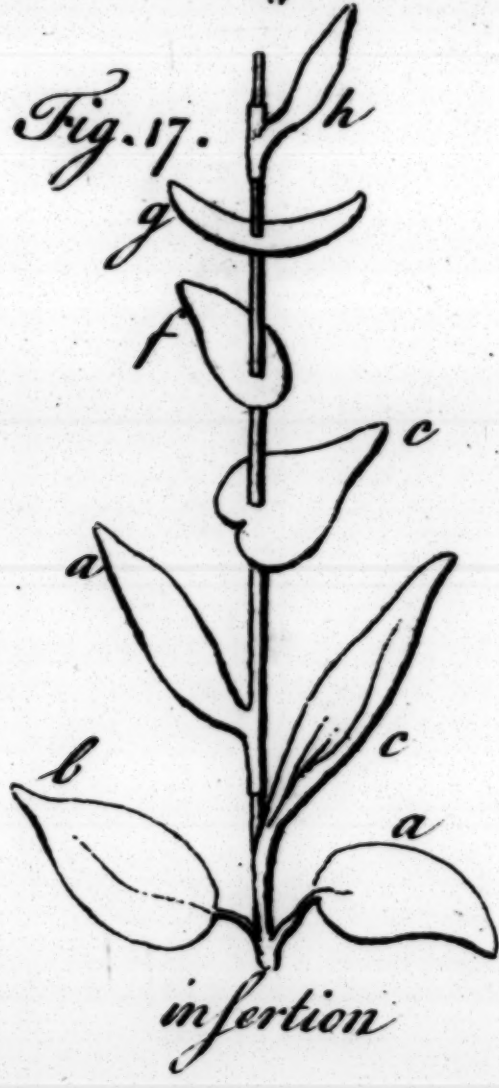
Situation



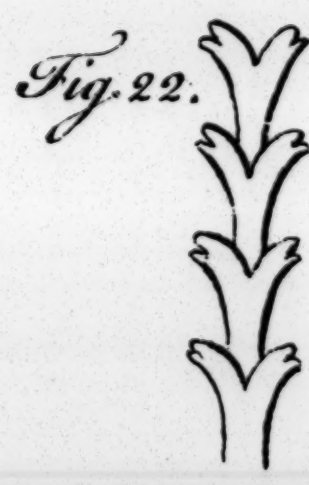
direction



place



infertion



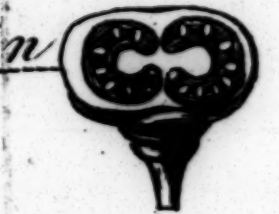
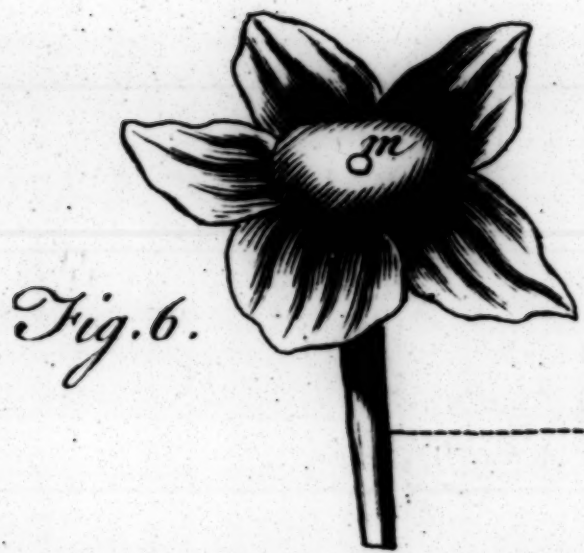


Fig.

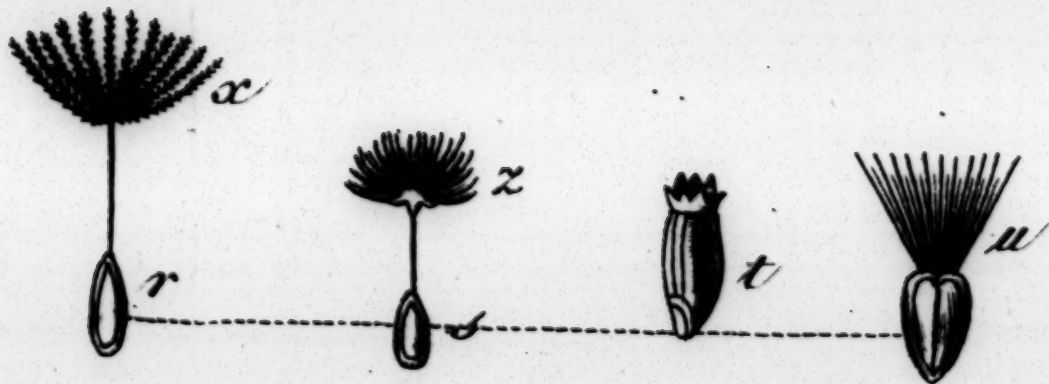
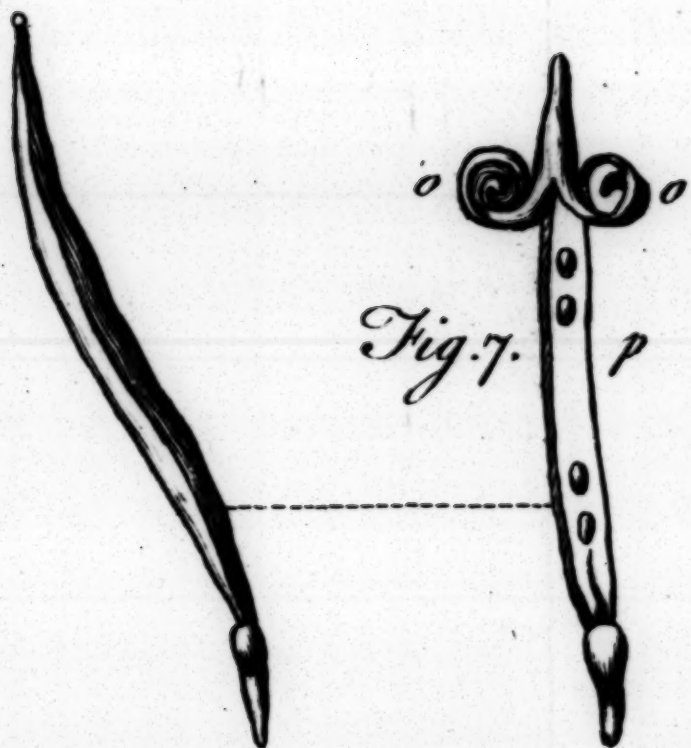
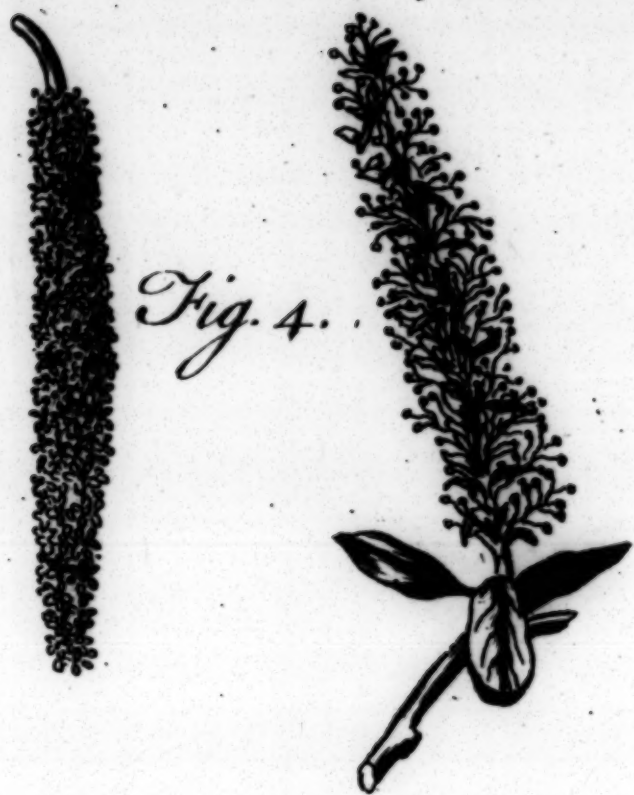
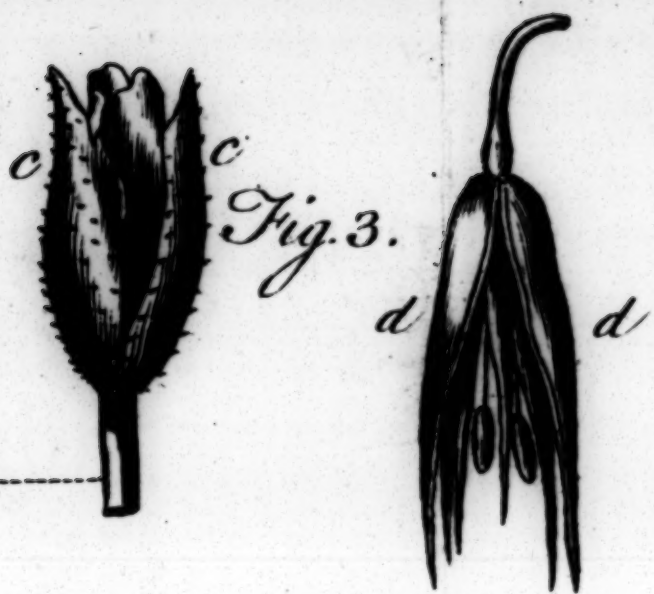




Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.

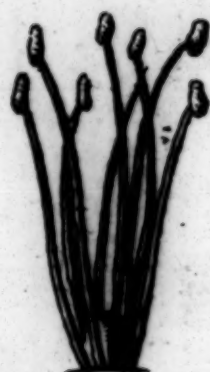


Fig. 7.



Fig. 8.



Fig. 9.



Fig. 13.



Fig. 14.

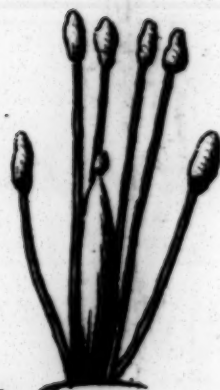


Fig. 15.



Fig. 19.



Fig. 20.



Fig. 21.



Fig. 22.

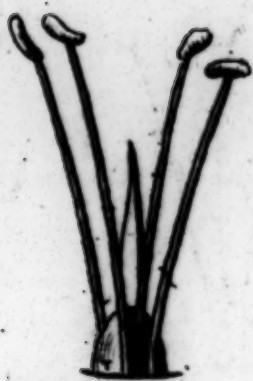


Fig. 4.

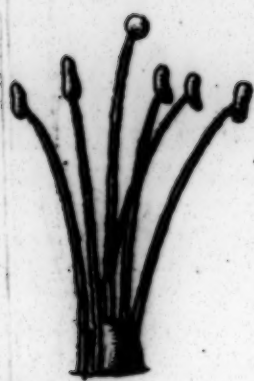


Fig. 5.



Fig. 6.



Fig. 10.



Fig. 11.

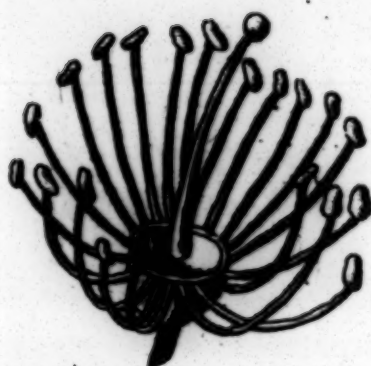


Fig. 12.



Fig. 16.



Fig. 17.



Fig. 18.



Fig. 22.

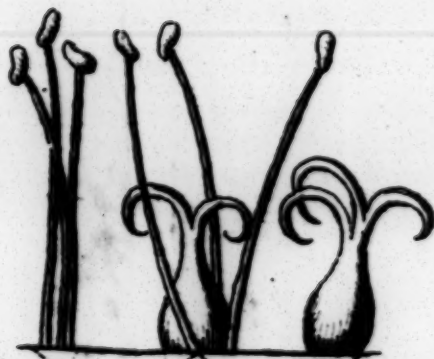


Fig. 23.

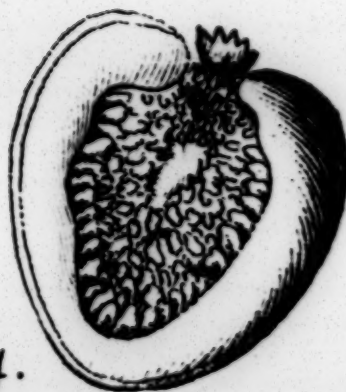


Fig. 24.



